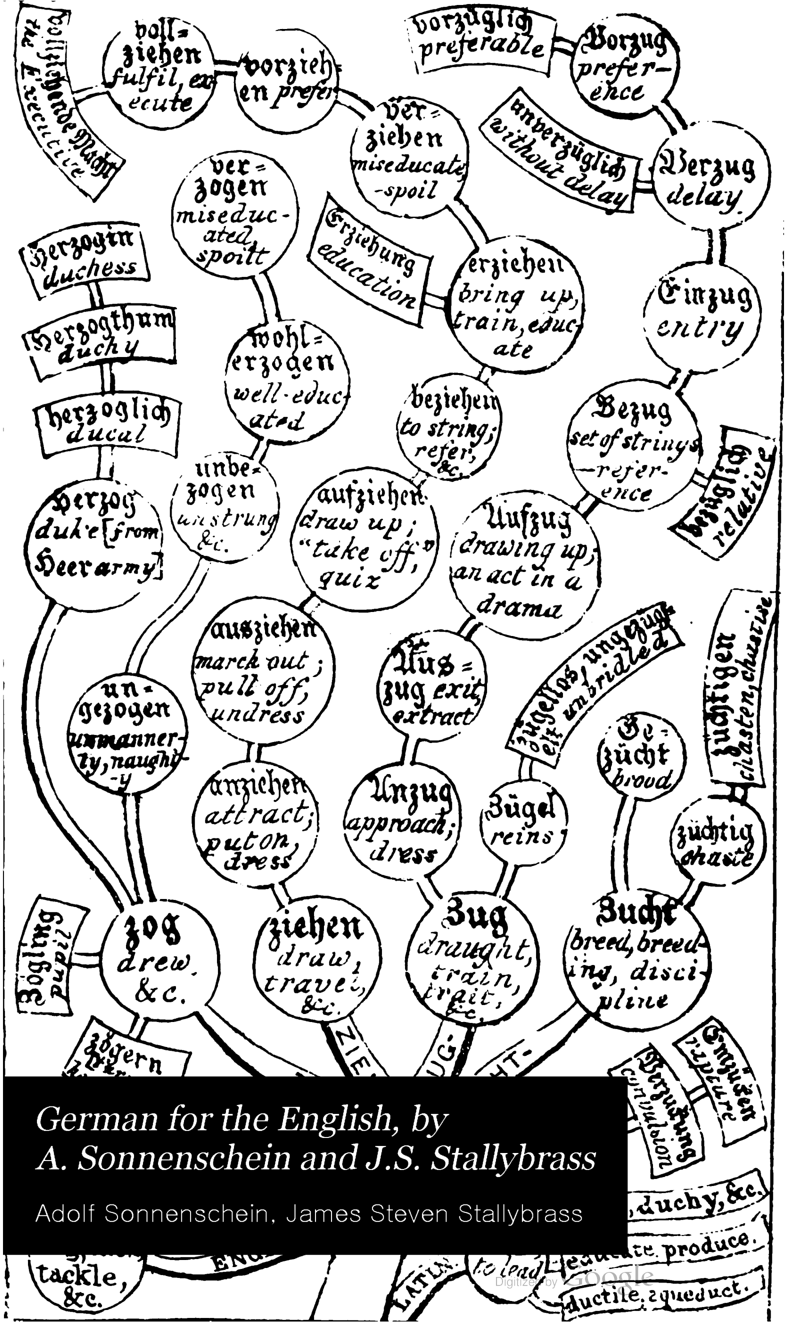


German for the English, by A. Sonnenschein and J.S. Stallybrass

Adolf Sonnenschein, James Steven Stallybrass

German for the English.

No. I.

FIRST READING BOOK.

EASY POEMS,

WITH

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS,

AND ILLUSTRATED BY

Notes and Tables Chiefly Etymological.

By A. SONNENSCHEIN,

AND

J. S. STALLYBRASS.

LONDON:
DAVID NUTT, 270, STRAND.

1857.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY WERTHEIMER AND CO.,
CIRCUS PLACE, FINSBURY CIRCUS.

PREFACE.

On opening a book in a foreign language, the Learner is appalled at the host of *strange words* that meets his eye: how is he to remember them all? And yet he is told, perhaps, that "the Language is one nearly *related* to his own"; that by far the greater part of these words are not "strangers" to him, but old acquaintance in disguise, old friends with a slight change of features. If so, how helpful for the Learner to have a Cicerone at his elbow, to tell him what are the features that have changed, what are those disguises by stripping off which, he can *recognise* the old faces that he has known ever since he was in the nursery! And this is just what we endeavour to do in Part First of this book, on the "Changes of Sound" which words undergo in passing from German into English.

We give the Learner a few rules, by means of which he can change vast numbers of German words into English ones; thus leading him, according to the philosophical method of Bacon and Pestalozzi, "from the Known to the Unknown." That method has been successfully followed in teaching the *Syntax* of lan-

guages, since the main principles of Grammar are the same in *all* languages: why then should it not be applied to the *Etymology* of a language, especially of one which is so nearly allied to the Learner's mother-tongue as the German is to the English?

Again, in teaching a language so rich in Composition and Derivation as the German is, an essential point is to explain the exact value of the Prefixes and Affixes, by which derivative words are formed. And this is what we have attempted to do in PART SECOND, on "Prefixes and Affixes."

The present book is a collection of Lessons repeatedly given by the Authors, who, having taught on this plan for many years, have the more confidence in bringing it before the public.

HOW TO USE THE BOOK.

LET the Pupil turn to PART THIRD, page 92, and prepare a piece of Reading with the help of the Interlineal Translation and the Foot-notes, making constant use of the Lists which are referred to in the latter, and which he will find in PARTS FIRST and SECOND, so that he can *read off* his lesson in PART FOURTH, page 168, and *answer questions on the Foot-notes*. The Teacher ought to make a part of each Lesson consist in *reading* the *Explanations* in *Parts First* and *Second*; also in hearing the Pupil *re-translate* into German easy Sentences founded on the Lessons he has

had. The Appendix, p. 188, merely shadows forth what a teacher *may do* in the way of forming such Sentences. Such exercises will familiarize the Pupil with the Sounds and Idioms of the language, though they will by no means supersede the use of a Grammar.

The Poems are arranged *progressively*, increasing in difficulty as they proceed. The last two, "The Luck of Edenhall" and "The Ring of Polycrates," are *not* interlined with English, but are accompanied by an almost literal Translation on the opposite page, and by Foot-notes.

ABBREVIATIONS.

L. of Ch.=List of Changes of Sound, pp. 2—35.
L. of Pr.=List of Prefixes, pp. 36—72.
L. of Aff.=List of Affixes, pp. 72—91.
conn.=connected.
contr.=contracted.
Lat.=Latin.
Square brackets [ ] always mark Etymological affinity.

SYNOPSIS.

PART I.

Changes of Sound.

I.—*Tongue-Sounds.*

II.—*Hissing-Sounds.*

III.—*Throat-Sounds.*

IV.—*Lip-Sounds.*

V.—*Voice-Sounds.*

PART II.

Word-Building.

Verb-Prefixes.

PART III.

Interlinear Translation.

PART IV.

APPENDIX.

FIRST READING BOOK.

PART I.

DIVISION OF SOUNDS.

It is well known that Vowels are only different ways of *opening* the mouth, and letting the voice pass through; while Consonants are different ways of *blocking up* the passage of the voice.

Take these five words, and pronounce them slowly: "are, ere, ill, old, true." In order to sound A, E, I, O, U, you held your mouth open in five different ways, to let the VOICE pass freely through. Hence these five sounds are called *Vocal* or *Vowel Sounds* [from the Latin *vox*, and the French *voix*, a voice].

Now take the words "Din, Tin, Thin; Den, Ten, Then." Here, in sounding the letters—

D—T—Th, *the voice is stopped by the*......... TONGUE.

Next take "Cirencester, Sicily, Shushan, Chichester, Ginger, Judges, Zigzag." Here the sounds—

C soft, S—Sh—Ch—G soft, Dg, J—Z,
are made by .... HISSING or BUZZING.

Again, take the words "Call, Kill, Quill, Hill, Get, Yet." Here the sounds—

C hard, K, Q—H—G hard—Y, *come from the* .... THROAT
(or somewhere *near* the throat).

Lastly, take "People, Babel, Forfeit, Vivid, Wayward." Here we produce the sounds—

P—B—F—V—W, *by closing* (*or nearly closing*) *the* .... LIPS.

Hence we call,

I. D—T—TH........................... TONGUE-SOUNDS.
II. C soft, S—Sh—Ch—G, Dg, J—Z HISSING-SOUNDS.
III. C hard, K, Q—H—G hard—Y... THROAT-SOUNDS.
IV. B—P—F—V—W .... LIP-SOUNDS.
V. A—E—I—O—U.................. VOICE-SOUNDS.

EXERCISE:—Take the following words, and classify all the Consonants (omitting *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*): "Portuguese, Badajos, Father, Verdict, Water, Practice, Citizen, Grudge, Pigeon, Equip, Guess, Yes, Hush, Kirk, Church, Hiss, Buzz."

1. Point out all the Tongue-Sounds; next, all the Hissing-Sounds, etc.

2. What kind of sound is P? 'A Lip-Sound.'
T? 'A Tongue-Sound.'
G hard? 'A Throat-Sound.'
S? 'A Hissing-Sound;' etc.

CHANGES OF SOUND.

Some nations find it hard to pronounce a Sound exactly as we do, so they utter another sound that is *like* it. Now the sounds that are *likest* one another are those made by the same parts of the mouth; thus all the *Lip Sounds* are very like one another, and so are all the *Tongue Sounds*, *&c.*—Accordingly, when a Negro tries to say "Never mind, father," he says "Nebber mind, fader." For V he uses B, both being *Lip-Sounds*; and for Th he uses D, both being *Tongue-Sounds.*—An infant, instead of saying "That is Papa," says "Dat Baba," namely D for Th, and B for P. In the same way, the German for *over* is ober or über, for *bolster* Polster, and for *then* denn.—Again: "When the men of Gilead asked those Ephraimites, which escaped: 'Art thou an Ephraimite?' If he said 'Nay,'

then said they unto him 'Say now Shibboleth;' and he said 'Sibboleth,' for he could not *frame* to pronounce it right. Then they took him and slew him." Now S and Sh are both *Hissing-Sounds.*—In like manner, Letters of the fourth kind, namely *Throat-Sounds*, are confounded with each other.—And above all, *Voice-Sounds* or *Vowels* are perpetually running into one another.

In the following Table, we have the different forms of the same words in several languages:—

	1.		2.		3.		4.	5.		6.	
Greek	Pater				Thugater			Diabol-os		Kannab-is	
Latin	Pater		Frater				Soror	Diabol-us		Cannab-is	
Russian	Bat-ea		Brat		Dotcher		Sestra	Diavol		Konopel	
German	Vater		Bruder		Tochter		Schwester	Teufel		Hanf	
Anglo-S.	Fæther		Brother		Dohter		Sweoster	Deofol		Henep	
English	Father		Brother		Daughter		Sister	Devil		Hemp	
Flemish	Vader		Brœder		Dogter		Zuster	Duivel		Hennep	
Swedish	Fader		Broder		Doter		Syster	Diefvul		Hamp.	
The Letters that have changed.	P B V F	t th d	F B	t th d	Th T D	g gh ch h *or dropt*	S Sch Z	D T	b v f fv	K C H	b p f
	Lip-Sounds.	Tongue-Sounds.	Lip-Sounds.	Tongue-Sounds.	Tongue-Sounds.	Throat-Sounds.	Hissing-Sounds.	Tongue-Sounds.	Lip-Sounds.	Throat-Sounds.	Lip-Sounds.

Looking down columns 1 and 2, we find the first letter in "father" and "brother" is always either P, B, F or V; and these are all *Lip-Sounds.* Again, the middle sound is T, Th, or D; and these are all *Tongue-Sounds.* In column 4, the letters that change are S, Sch, Z; which are all *Hissing-Sounds.* The middle sound in "daughter," and the first in "hemp," are

always a G, Gh, K, C, Ch, or H; all of which are *Throat-Sounds*. So in column 5, we find the *Vowels*, *ia*, changing into *eu*, *eo*, *e*, *ui*, and *ie*. In fact, those letters in the above table, that change with one another, are either all Lip-Sounds, or all Tongue-Sounds, all Hissing-Sounds, all Throat-Sounds, or else all Vowels.—As a rule, therefore,—

Sounds of the same kind are the most interchangeable.

I.—TONGUE-SOUNDS.

German.—D—T, Th.
English.—D—T—Th.

English words in which these Tongue-Sounds interchange: *sit*, *settle*, *saddle*; *seethe*, *sodden*; *burden*, *burthen*; *girded* or *girt*, *girdle* or *girth*, etc.

1.—D, T, tt, Th,* *change into* Th.

a.—D into Th.

Bad	bath.
baden	to bathe.
beide	both.
Bruder	brother.
Bude	booth.
da, dar, dort	there.
Dach	thatch, roof.
danken	to thank.
dann	then.
denn	than.
daß	that.
Daumen	thumb.
dein	thine, thy.
denken	to think.
der, die, das	that, the.
dicht [tight]	thick, dense.
dick	thick.
Dieb	thief.
dies	this.
Ding	thing.
Distel	thistle.
doch	though, yet, but
Donner	thunder; *whence:*
Donnerstag	thunderer's day, Thor's day, or Thursday.
Dorf	thorp, village.
Dorn	thorn.

* Th in German is sounded T; so that from the German Th to the English Th *there is a change.*

drei three.
dreschen to thrash.
dringen to throng, to press.
Drang a throng, pressure.
dritte third.
Drossel throstle, thrush.
Du thou.
dünn thin.
durch through.
Durchfahrt thoroughfare.
Durst thirst.
edel noble; *ethel* and *athel*, as in Ethelbert, Athelstan, Atheling, etc.
Eid oath.
Erde earth.
Feder feather, pen.
fördern to further.
Haide heath.
Heide heathen.
Herd hearth.
Jugend [Anglo-Saxon *yugoth*] youth.
Kleid clothing.
kleiden to clothe.
Leder leather.
Mund mouth.
nieder be-neath, nether; *whence*:
Niederlande Netherlands, *or* Low Countries.
Nord north.
oder [other, either] or; "this *or* that," means "this *other-wise* that." (*Or* is from *other*, as *bore* from *bother*.)
Pfad path.
Schade scaith, hurt.
schaden to scathe, to hurt.
Scheide sheath.
Schmied smith.
Schmiede smithy.
sieden to seethe.
Süd south.
Tod death.
Weide willow, withy, with; *as in Samson's* "seven green withs."
werden to grow, become; *whence*:
Würde worth; *and*
würdig worthy.

b.—T, tt, Th,* into Th.

fort forth, further.
fünfte fifth;
in the same way:
sechste sixth, etc.
Geburt [*from* gebären to bear] birth.
Gurt girth.
Latte lath.

* T and Th in German are both sounded T.

'Monat	month.
Mutter	mother.
-t (Verb-ending) th, *as in*:	
"wer reitet?	who rideth?"
tausend	thousand.
treiben	to thrive.
Vater	father.
Wetter	weather.

2.—T, *tt*, Th, *change into* D.

alt	old.
Bart	beard.
Bette	bed.
bieten	to bid;
whence:	
verbieten	to forbid, etc.
Blatt [blade]	leaf.
Blut	blood.
bluten	to bleed.
blutroth	blood-red.
Braut	bride.
Brauttag	bridal-day.
breit	broad.
Brot	bread.
Brut	brood.
brüten	to brood, hatch.
Diamant	diamond.
Draht	thread, wire.
dritte	third.
eitel	idle, vain.
Eltern [elders]	parents.
Falte	fold;
whence:	
Einfalt [one-fold]	simplicity
Fluth	flood.
Furt	ford.
Futter	fodder, food.
Garten	garden.
Gott	God.
gürten	to gird.
Gürtel	girdle.
gut	good.
halten	to hold.
halt!	hold! halt!
Haupt [Anglo-Saxon *heafod*]	head.
Haut	hide, skin.
-heit (Noun-Affix)	-head, -hood;
as in:	
Gottheit	Godhead.
Kindheit	childhood.
hinter [hinder]	be-hind.
Hirt	herdsman;
whence:	
Schafhirt	shepherd.
Schweinhirt	swineherd.
hundert	hundred.
hüthen	to heed, guard, tend;
whence:	
Huth	heed, care;
and:	
Hut	hood, hat;
Fingerhut [finger-hat],	thimble.
kalt	cold.
Karte	card.

kneten	to knead.
laut	loud.
leiten	to lead.
Leiter	ladder.
Matte	mead, meadow.
Meth	mead,(a drink).
Mitte, mittel	mid-, middle; *whence:*
Mittag	mid-day; *also:*
Mitternacht	midnight; *and:*
Mittwoch	[mid-week] Wednesday.
Muth	[mood] courage.
nackt	naked.
Natter, Otter	adder.
Noth	need, distress.
Rath	rede,* counsel.
Räthsel	riddle.
reiten	to ride.
Rennthier	[run-deer] reindeer.
roth	red.
Ruthe	rod.
Sattel	saddle.
Schatten	shade, shadow.
Schulter	shoulder.
schüttern	[shudder] to shake.
schreiten	to stride.
Schritt	[stride] step.
Seite	side.
selten	seldom.
Stadt	[*stead*, as in *Wanstead*] town.
Stätte	stead, place.
statt	instead.
-te, -et (Verb-ending)	-d, -ed, *as:*
liebte	loved,
geliebet	beloved, etc.

---

* Rathen means *to guess* (or, as the Americans say, *calculate*); connected with the Latin *reor* I reckon, *ratio*, and the English *rate*. Rathen also means *to advise*. The English *to rede* has both meanings: *to guess*, as in "I can't *rede the riddle*"; and *to advise*, (and the Noun *rede*=advice), as in the following:

"Hear, Land o' Cakes and brither Scots,
"Frae Maidenkirk to John o' Groat's!
"If there 's a hole in a' your coats,
"I *rede* ye tent it:
"A chiel's amang you, takin' notes,
"And, faith, he'll prent it."

Also, after a Letter of *Advice*:

"In ploughman's phrase, God send you speed
"Still daily to grow wiser;
"And may ye better reck the *rede*
"Than ever did th' adviser!"

BURNS.

Tag	day.
tändeln	to dandle, trifle.
Tanz	dance.
taub	deaf.
Taube	dove.
tauchen	to duck.
taufen [to dip]	to baptize.
Teufel	devil.
Thal	dale, dell.
Thaler	dollar.
Thau	dew.
theilen	to deal *or* dole out, divide.
theuer	dear.
Thier [deer]	animal.
Thor, Thür	door.
thun	to do; *hence:*
that	did; *and:*
That	deed.
tief	deep.
Tochter	daughter.
Tod	death.
todt	dead.
tragen [drag, draw, etc.]	to carry.
Trampelthier [tramp-deer]	dromedary.
tränken	to drench.
Traum	a dream.
traurig [dreary]	sad.
treiben	to drive; *whence:*
Trift	a meadow, to which cattle were *driven*.
triefen, träufen, tröpfeln, träufeln	to drip, drop, dribble, drizzle.
trinken	to drink.
Trommel	a drum.
Tropfen	a drop.
tüchtig	doughty.
unter	under.
walten	to wield, to rule.
waten	to wade.
weit	wide, far.
Wermuth	wormwood.
Wittwe	widow.
Wittwer	widower.
Wort	word.
Wuth [*wood* is Old English for *mad*]	rage.
Zeit	tide [as in *noon-tide*, *Whitsuntide*] time.

3.—D *or* T,

added after *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, or *x*, at the end of a word or syllable.

While *dog* in Sanscrit is *suan*, in Latin *can*, and in Greek *kun*, all ending in N; the German makes it Hund, and the English *hound*, both adding a D to the

root. So from the Latin *paganus* [pagan], and the French *paysan,* we have made *peasant,* adding a T to to the word. In like manner, a lagger (one who lags) has become *laggard*; a bragger, *braggart ;* so *coward, dotard, sluggard, etc.*

In fact, after some sounds (especially N), it is so easy to pronounce D or T, and seems to finish the word so neatly, that, to many ears, the word appears incomplete without it. That is why many people say, "*Orphant, darlint, varmint, scholard*; a *muslint gownd*; to *drownd* a dog," etc.

Some words have the D or T in English, and not in German; others in the German, but not in the English.

WITH T OR D.	WITHOUT T OR D.
Abend	even-tide.
Axt	axe.
Dechant [*decanus*]	dean.
doppelt	double.
Dutzend [from *duodecim*, or 2 & 10]	dozen.
einst	once.
haggard	hager.
Jemand [je, aye, ever; & Mann man]	any man, some one.
Komödiant	comedian.
Mailand	Milan.
Mond	moon.
Morast	morass.
Niemand	no man, nobody.
Palast	palace.
Pergament & Parchment	from *Pergamena.*
Pfand	pawn, pledge.
Pheasant	Fasan.
Rand	rim, edge.
Saft	sap, juice.
-schaft (Noun-Affix) *as in* Freundschaft	-ship; friendship.
schinden	to skin.
thunder	Donner.
Tyrant [τυραννος]	Tyrann.
weiland	whilome.

We may add some words compounded with the Affixes, -lich *like*, and -halben, -wegen, -willen=on *behalf*, on account, for the sake.

From eigen own, comes eigentlich [own-like] properly.
„ kennen to know, „ kenntlich that may be known.
„ Namen name, „ namentlich by name, specially.
„ Orden order, „ ordentlich orderly, regular.
„ Wesen being *or* essence, „ wesentlich essential.

From dessen *of that*,	comes dessenthalben, dessentwegen, dessentwillen, on account *of that*.
„ deren *of them*,	„ derenthalben, etc., on *their* behalf.
„ mein, meiner *of me*,	„ meinethalben, etc., for *my* sake.
etc.	etc.

II.—HISSING-SOUNDS.

German.—Tz, Z—Sz, S—Sch.
English.—Z—C soft, S—Sh—Ch, Tch—G, Dg, J.

We know how the Wiltshire boy says: "I zee'd a vire o' Zunday night," changing S into Z; and that the Ephraimites said Sibboleth for Shibboleth.

Tz or Z in German is sounded *ts*; thus Schutz is pronounced like *shoots*; it stands midway between Hissing and Tongue-Sounds, so that (in 4) we find it changing into a Tongue-Sound, namely T; and (in 5) to a Hissing-Sound, S or C.

4.—Tz, Z, Sz, *and* S, *change into* T (*a Tongue-Sound*)

a.—Tz, Z, *into* T.

beitzen	to bait.	Münze [Lat. *moneta*]	mint, coin.
Filz	felt.	Netz	net.
glänzen	to glint, glitter.	Pflanze	plant.
grunzen	to grunt.	Ratze	rat.
heitzen	to heat.	Salz	salt.
Herz	heart.	schlitzen	to slit.
Hitze	heat.	Schmerz	smart, pain.
jetzt [yet; the Lat. *at*]	now.	Schnauze	snout.
Katze	cat.	Schürze [skirt]	apron.
kurz	curt, short.	schwarz	swart, swarthy, black.
Lenz	lent-time, spring.	schwitzen	to sweat.
letz-ter	lat-ter.	setzen	to set.
Malz	malt.		

ſitzen	to sit.
Spitze [spit]	point, tip, top.
ſpritzen	to spirt, to squirt.
Stelze	stilt.
wälzen	to welter, to roll.
Warze	wart.
wetzen	to whet.
Witz	wit.
Zahl [tale]	number.
zahm	tame.
Zahn [Greek *odont*, Latin *dent*, Danish *tand*, Gothic *tunthus*]	tooth.
Zähre	tear.
Zange	tongs.
zapfen	to tap.
Zapfer	tapster.
Zehe	toe.
zehn	ten.
Zeichen	token.
Zeit	tide, time.
Ziegel [*tegulum*]	tile, brick.
ziehen	to tow, tug, pull; to move, travel.
Zinn [Lat. *stannus*]	tin.
Zoll	toll.
Zopf [top]	tuft.
zu	to.
zucken	to tug, twitch.
Zunge	tongue.
zwanzig	twenty.
zwei	two.
Zweig	twig, branch.
zwicken	to twitch, tweak, pinch.
Zwilling	twin.
zwingen	to twinge, pinch, press.
Zwirn [twine]	thread.
zwitſchern	to twitter.
zwölf	twelve.

b.—Sz, S *into* T.

Ameiſe	emmet, ant.
Apricoſe	apricot.
aus	out.
außer	outside, without; *extra-*.
äußer	outer.
äußern	to utter.
äußerſt	uttermost.
beißen	to bite; *whence:*
Biß	a bite; Bißchen a little bite *or* bit [as *morsel* from Latin *mordere* to bite]; *and:*
Gebiß	bit (of a bridle).
beſſer	better.
das	that (Pron.).
daß	that (Conj.).
es	it.
eſſen	to eat.
Faß	vat, vessel.
Fuß	foot.
Gaſſe [gate]	street, lane.

Gate (which, as well as our *gait*, comes from *to go*) is Scotch for *way*, *road*, *street*; thus, "Dinna clatter that gate" = "Don't chatter that way";

Canongate, the famous street in Edinburgh, means Canon-Street.

Geiß	goat.
Gries	grit.
groß	great.
grüßen	to greet.
Haß	hate, hatred.
hassen	to hate.
heiß	hot.
Horniß	hornet.
Kessel	kettle.
lassen	to let.
Linse	lentil.
Loos	lot.
messen	to mete *or* measure.
Mörser	mortar.
Nessel	nettle.
rasseln	to rattle.
saß	sat.
schießen	to shoot; *whence:*
Schuß	a shot.
schleißen	to slit.
schließen	to shut; *whence:*
Schloß [slot]	a lock; castle.
schmeißen	to smite.
Schweiß	sweat.
Sessel	settle, stool, chair.
Spieß [spit]	spear.
sprießen	to sprout; *whence:*
Sprosse	a sprout; *and*
Sprößling [sproutling]	a descendant, scion.
Straße	street.
süß	sweet.
vergessen	to forget.
was?	what?
Wasser	water.
wissen	to wit, to know;
ich weiß	I wot.

5.—Tz *or* Z *into* S *or* C soft.

glänzen	to glance, glitter.
Kreuz	cross.
Lanze	lance.
letzt	last.
Platz	place.
Tanz	dance.
Unze	ounce.
Zitrone	citron.

6.—Sch *change into* S.

This change occurs chiefly before the letters *l*, *m*, *n*, *w*. There are a few examples of its happening in other cases; as, Gäscht yeast, Harnisch harness, coat of mail, schon [soon] already.

6.—Sch CHANGES INTO S.

a.—Schl *into* Sl.

Schlacke slacks, dross.
Schlaf sleep.
schlafen to sleep.
schlaff slack, loose.
schlagen [slay] to strike;
whence:
Schlacht [on-slaught, slaughter] battle; *and*
schlachten to slaughter.
schlau sly.
Schlehe sloe.
schleichen to slink, creep.
schleifen to slip, slide;
whence:
Schleife slip-knot, loop, sling.
schleißen to slit.
Schleuse sluice.
schlicht sleek.
Schlinge sling;
whence:
Schlange a snake.
Schlitten sled, sledge.
schlotterig slatternly.
schlüpfen to slip.
schlüpfrig slippery.
Schlummer slumber.

b.—Schm *into* Sm.

schmacken, schmatzen } to smack.
schmal [small] narrow.
schmauchen to smoke.
schmecken to smack, to taste.
schmeicheln [smile] to coax, flatter.
schmeißen to smite, smash.
schmelzen to smelt, melt.
Schmerz smart, pain.
Schmied smith.
schmieren to smear.
Schmuck [smug-ness] ornament.
schmuggeln to smuggle.
Schmutz smut, dirt.
schmutzig smutty, dirty.

c.—Schn *into* Sn.

schnarchen, schnarcheln to snore, snarl.
schnauben, schnaufen to snuff, breathe hard.
Schnauze snout.
Schnecke [snake, sneak] snail.
Schnee snow.
schneien to snow.
Schnepfe snipe.
schnippen, schnappen to snap;
whence:
schnippisch snappish.
schnupfen to take snuff.
Schnupftabak [snuff-tobacco] snuff.
Schnuppe snuff (of a candle).
schnurren [snore, snort] to snarl, growl.

c

d.—Schw *into* Sw.

Schwaden	swath.	schwellen	to swell.
schwadern	to swagger.	schwelgen [to swallow, swill]	to feast.
Schwalbe	swallow.	Schwert	sword.
Schwan	swan.	Schwester [Anglo-Saxon *sweoster*]	sister.
schwarz	swart, black.	schwimmen	to swim.
Schwarm	swarm.	Schwindler	swindler.
Schweden	Sweden.	schwingen	to swing.
Schweif [sweep]	tail.	schwitzen	to sweat.
Schwein	swine.	schwören	to swear.
Schweiß	sweat.	schwül	sweltery, sultry
Schweiz	Switzerland.		
Schweizer	Switzer, Swiss.		

7.—Sch *changes into* Sc, Sk, Squ, X.

The mere spelling of the German sch (which they now pronounce as a simple *sh*) would lead one to guess that formerly it was composed of two sounds; namely, first a Hissing-Sound, S, and then a Throat-Sound, Ch or K.—Accordingly, we find their sch often represented in other tongues by *sk* or *sc:* thus, the word Fleisch, *flesh*, is in Flemish *vleesch* (pronounced *flesk*); in Dutch *fleesk*; in Danish *flesk*; in Swedish *flask*: in Anglo-Saxon *flæsc*.—(Hyde Clarke's *Engl. Gram.*)

In English words, *sh* often changes into *sc* or *sk*. That which *shoots* is either a *shuttle*, a *shuttlecock*, or a *scuttle* (to shoot coals with). In the same way we have *shuffle* and *scuffle;* a *ship*, a *skiff*, and a *skipper* or captain; *shatter* and *scatter;* *shriek* and *screak*, or *screech;* *bushy* and *bosky; fresh* and *frisky*; *shell* and *scale* (of a fish, or of a balance): also, in Shakspeare, "the cruel *tushes*" of a boar.

X is made up of K and S; as, *lynx* is read like *links*, and *John Knox* like *John knocks*. Hence, X (that is, *ks*) is often put for *sk* or *sc;* for instance, the Latin

misc- becomes *mix*; and, instead of "he *ask'd* me," many people say, "he *ax'd* me."

Flasche flask.
frisch [frisk, frisky] brisk, lively; *also*: fresh.
Landschaft landscape.
mischen to mix.
Schade scaith, injury.
Schale scale (of a balance).
schallen [squall] to make noise.
Scharlach scarlet.
scharmützeln to skirmish.
Schärpe scarf.
Schaum scum, froth;

whence:

Meerschaum sea-scum, sea-foam.
schäumen to scum, skim.
schauern to scare, to awe.
schelten to scold.
scheuern to scour.
schief a-skew.
Schiff-lein [little ship] skiff.
Schiffer skipper, boatman.
schinden to skin, to peel.
Schinder skinner.
Schirm screen;

whence:

Regenschirm [rain-screen] umbrella; *and* Sonnenschirm [sun-screen] parasol.
schleichen to skulk.
Schorf scurf.
Schottland Scotland.
Schraube screw.
Schrei a scream, screech, cry.
schreiben [*scribere*, scribble, scribe, etc.] to write;

whence:

be-schreiben to de-scribe.
Schrift scripture.
Schule [from the Greek σχολη, leisure, ease] school.
Schüler scholar.
Schüppe scoop.
Schürze [skirt] apron.
Tisch [disc, desk] table.
(verschwinden to vanish);

whence:

verschwenden to squander.
wischen [whisk] to wipe, sweep.
zwischen 'twixt, betwixt, between.

We have now reached the border-land between the Hissing-Sounds and the Throat-Sounds. We have seen

ſch, a purely Hissing-Sound, change into *sk, sc, squ, x* (=*ks*); in which the *S* is a Hissing-Sound, and the *K, C, Qu* are Throat-Sounds.

III.—THROAT-SOUNDS.

German.—ℌ—Ch—G—K.
English.—H—Gh, G hard—C hard, K—Y.

The Throat-Sounds are remarkably flighty, and very apt to change:—

(*a*) Into *Hissing-Sounds;*
(*b*) Among *themselves;*
(*c*) Into *Lip-Sounds,* and even *Vowels;*
or (*d*) To be *dropt* altogether.

8.—Ch, K, G (Throat-Sounds), *change into* Ch *or* Tch, G soft, Dg *or* J (Hissing-Sounds).

So, in Scotland and the north of England, they say *brig* and *thack,* for *bridge* and *thatch*; from *drag*, we have formed *drudge* and *dredge*; from *dig*, *ditch*; from *stick*, *stitch*; from the Latin *mag-nus,* our *mayor* and *major,* etc. In all these cases, the hard K, G, and Y (Throat-Sounds), change into the soft *tch* or *ch*, *dg* or *j* (Hissing-Sounds).

The following table gives a few examples, chiefly of Northern pronunciation, with the equivalents in German, and in our Southern dialect. It will be seen that the North British and the German lean more to the *hard* (Throat-)Sounds, and the South British and French to the *soft* (Hissing-)Sounds.

Hard (Throat) Sounds: C, K, G, Gh, Ch.		*Soft (Hissing) Sounds:* Tch, Ch, Dg, G, J.
NORTH BRITISH, ETC.	GERMAN.	SOUTHERN ENGLISH, ETC.
N. Brit. Birk	Birke	birch.
„ Brig	Brücke	bridge.
„ Dike (from *dig*)	Teich a pond	ditch.
„ Kirk (of Scotland)	Kirche	Church (of England).
„ Poke (whence *pocket*)		pouch; French *poche*.
Sack; French *sac*	Sack, Säckel	satchel; and French *sachet*=little sack.
Americ. Sleigh		sledge.
N. Brit. Sic	solch	such.
„ Thack	Dach	thatch.
Wake	wachen	to watch.

Bank bench.
Bark bark, barge.
Birke birch.
(bleich pale);
from:
bleichen to bleach, blench, blanch.
Bruch [from brechen to break] a breach, a fraction.
Brücke bridge.
Buche beech; the bark of which was used for writing;
(*whence*:
Buch book).
Bürger burgess.
Dach [thatch] roof.
Dolch dudgeon, dagger.
dunkel dingy, dim, dark.
Ecke edge, corner.
Engel angel.
Fink finch.
flechten to pleach, plait.
flügge [from fliegen to fly] fledge, fledged.
Ge-stank stench.
Gurgel gorge, throat.
Hag hedge, fence.
(hängen to hang);
whence:
Hänge hinge;
and:
Anhänger [on-hanger, *hench*-man] adherent.
Hanke haunch.
Hecke hedge.
hecken to hatch.
Höcker hunch.
jucken to itch.
Käfer chafer, beetle.
Kaff chaff.
Kalk [chalk] lime.
Kamin chimney.
Kammer chamber.
Kanzler chancellor.
Kanzlei chancery.

Kapelle	chapel.
karg	chary.
Karl	Charles.
Käse	cheese.
Kastanie	chestnut.
Kiste	chest, box.
käuen	to chew.
kaufen [cheapen]	to buy.
Kaufmann	chapman, merchant.
Kerl	churl.
Kinn	chin.
Kirche	church.
Kirsche	cherry.
kriechen	to crouch, cringe, creep.
Krücke	crutch.
Küche [*from* kochen to cook]	kitchen.
Küchlein [chick-ling]	chicken.
Lage	ledge.
Lerche	larch.
Melk-kuh	milch-cow.
Mücke	midge, gnat.
Papagei	popinjay, parrot.
Pech	pitch.
Pergament [*from* Pergamos]	parchment.
Pflicht	pledge, obligation, duty.
predigen	to preach.
recken	to reach, stretch; [whence *rack*].
Säckel	satchel.
sengen	to singe.
solch	such.
Sprache, Spruch	speech.
Sprenkel	springe [*from* springen to spring].
stärken [to make *stark*, or stiff]	to starch.
(stechen	to stick *or* sting); *whence*:
Stich	a stitch.
strecken	to stretch.
Teich	[ditch], pool.
tränken	to drench.
wachen	to keep awake, to watch.
welch [Scot. *whilk*]	which.
Wicke	vetch.
zucken	to twitch, jerk.
zwicken	to twitch.
zwingen	to twinge.

9.—Ch *changes into* K, G hard, Gh; *or is* Dropt.

See, on p. 16, "(*a*), (*b*), (*c*), (*d*)."

We now come to examples of Throat-Sounds changing among themselves (*b*), or disappearing altogether (*d*); both of which things they do very freely.

(*b*) Throat-Sounds change *among themselves*.

Thus—

in the	Latin *hort-us*, Greek *chort-os*, and Engl. *gard-en* and *yard*	H, Ch, G, Y are interchanged.
in	ve*h*icle, con*vey*, in*veigh*, & in*vec*tive	H, Y, Gh, C „ „
in	dig, dike; drag, draught, track, dray, tray	G, Gh, K, Y „ „
in	slay, slaughter; work, wrought, wright	Y, Gh, K „ „

(*d*) Throat-Sounds often *disappear*.

Thus, our Affix *-ly* is formed from *like* by dropping the K; so that *friendly*, *goodly*, mean *friendlike*, *goodlike*. So, from *make*, (instead of *make-d*), we have *made* (K dropt); from *Magdalen*, *Maudlin* (G dropt); from *wagon*, *wain*, etc.

Some Throat-Sounds vanish, if not out of sight, yet out of hearing. Thus, the old words *burgh*, *thurgh*, (pronounced like *burg*, *thurg*), are now become *borough*, and *thorough* or *through*: a Voice-Sound, *ou*, has been put in after the R, but we *hear* nothing of the Gh; it is spelt, but not sounded. Indeed, this Gh, like the old French nobility, fills a prominent place to the *eye*, but rarely claims its ancient right to be *heard*. Whenever it occurs, (except in a few words, like *laugh*, *cough*, *enough*, where it is pronounced F), it has chiefly a historical and genealogical interest, like the title *De*; pointing to the palmy days, when it possessed the same force as its German, Scotch, and Spanish neighbours (Ch, and J, or X) still enjoy; namely, that of a deep Throat-Sound.

"In Freight and Fright, in Weight and Wight,
In Right and Might, in Night and Light,
GH has left his corpse in Sight;
His soul has long since taken Flight."

However, Gh—even when not pronounced—is a great guide to the derivation of a word; it always points to some Throat-Sound in the root: as, *draught* from *drag*; *sought* from *seek*; *besought* from (*beseech*, which was originally) *beseek*; *drought* from *dry*, which is in German trocken; *Bight* (of Benin, etc.)=*bay*, in German Bucht, from biegen to *bow* or bend.

a.—Ch *into* K, G.

Arche ark.
auch eke, also.
Bach beck, brook.
Becher beaker.
bleich blank, pale.
brechen to break.
Buch book.
-chen (Noun-Affix) -kin; *as in* Lämmchen lambkin.
Deich dyke.
dicht thick, dense.
Dolch dirk, dagger.
Drachen dragon.
Eiche oak.
Friedrich Frederick.
Grieche (a) Greek.
horch! hark!
horchen to hearken.
Joch yoke.
kichern to giggle.
Knöchel [from Knochen bone] knuckle.
Koch cook.
kochen to cook.
Kuchen cake.
Küchlein[chick-ling]chicken
krachen to crack.
Lauch leek.
Lerche lark.
-lich (Affix) -like.
machen to make.
Milch milk.
Mönch monk.
pochen [poke] to knock.
rächen [wreak] to avenge.
Rauch reek, smoke.
Rechen (a) rake.
rechnen to reckon.
Sichel sickle.
sicher sicker, secure, sure.
siech sick.
sprechen to speak.
stechen to stick, sting.

Storch	stork.
streichen	to stroke.
suchen	to seek.
tauchen	to duck *or* dive.
wach	awake.
wachen [wake]	to keep awake.
weich [weak]	soft;
whence:	
schwach	weak.
Woche	week.
Zeichen	token, sign.

b.—Ch *into* Gh; *or* Dropt.

acht	eight.
Albrecht [all-bright]	Albert.
brachte	brought.
(denken	to think);
whence:	
ich dachte	I thought;
Bedacht	thoughtfulness, consideration.
dich	thee.
dicht	tight, close, dense.
doch	though, yet.
durch	thorough, through.
Flucht	flight.
flüchten	to fleet, flee.
flüchtig	flighty, fleeting.
Euch	you.
Fracht	freight.
Frucht	fruit.
Furcht	fright, fear.
Gicht	gout.
Heinrich	Henry.
hoch	high.
ich	I.

icht (in Old German)	aught, something;
whence:	
nicht [nought]	not; *and*
Nichts	nought, nothing.*
Kranich	crane.
lachen	to laugh;
whence:	
Gelächter	laughter.
leicht	light, easy.
-lich (Affix)	-ly;
as:	
freundlich	friendly.
Licht	(a) light;
whence:	
leuchten	to give light, to light.
Macht	might.
manch [for mannich]	many.
mich	me.
(mögen	may);
whence:	
ich möchte	I might;
Macht	might, power;

* Luther says: "Gott hat aus Nichts ein Ichts gemacht, God has made an aught (something) out of nought."

mächtig mighty.
Nacht night.
nach, nah nigh.
Nachbar neighbour.
Pflicht plight, liability, duty.
Pracht [brightness] splendour
whence:
prächtig [bright, pretty] splendid.
recht right;
whence:
aufrichten to set upright, erect.
Ruprecht Rupert, Robert.
Schlacht [on-slaught, slaughter] battle.
schlachten to slaughter.
schmeicheln [smile] to coax, to flatter.

schnarchen, schnarcheln } to snore, snort, snarl.
Sicht, Gesicht sight;
whence:
Einsicht insight.
Obsicht oversight;
Aussicht outlook, prospect, etc.
tauchen to duck, dip, dye.
Tochter daughter.
tüchtig doughty.
Wachtel [from wacken *or* quacken to quack] a quail.
Wucht, Gewicht weight;
whence:
wichtig weighty, important.

10.—H, G *change into* Gh, W, Y, I; *or are* Dropt.

[See, p. 16, "(*a*), (*b*), (*c*), (*d*)." We have here examples of the last three.]

H and G, like the rest of the Throat-Sounds, are very changeable. Thus we have the following English words, connected with the Latin *trah* draw, and the German trag carry:

drag	dray, tray	draw
draggle	trail	drawl
drain	train	drone
draught	track	draft:

where the Latin H and the German G are represented either by the Throat-Sounds K, G, Gh, H, Y; by the

Lip-Sounds F, W; by the Vowel I; or are dropt altogether (as in *drone*).

Through W which is next door to U, and through Y which is next door to I, the Throat-Sounds are brought very near the Vowels; indeed we have just seen them change into I in the words *drain*, *train* and *trail*.

a.—H *into* Gh, W.

Ahl	awl.
blähen	to blow, puff up.
blühen	to blow, bloom.
gähnen	to yawn.
hoch	high.
hohl	hollow;
	whence:
Höhle	a hollow, a cavern.
Holz	holt, wold, wood.
kahl	callow, bald.
Krähe	(a) crow.
krähen	to crow.
Kuh	cow.
mähen	to mow.
nahe	nigh.
Pfühle	pillow, bolster, featherbed.
Reihe	(a) row, a line.
roh, rauh, rauch	raw, rough, rugged.
(sehen	to see);
	whence:
sah	saw.
Sahl-weide	[sallow-withy] a sallow.
Stroh	straw.
zäh	tough.
ziehen	to tow, tug.

b.—G *into* Gh, W, Y, I; *or* Dropt.

Auge eye; *also*, *in general*, an opening;

whence:

Windauge (an opening for the wind, for *ven*tilation), a *wind-ow*.

Balg [what *bulges* out] bellows, belly.

be-gehren to yearn or long for.

(bergen to hide);

whence:

bury, burrow, barrow, (an ancient tomb);

and:

Burg castle, burgh, borough.

biegen, beugen, bücken — to bow *or* bend; *whence*:
Bogen — (a) bow (to shoot with); *also*, an arch of a building.
Bug — (a) bow (of a ship).
Bugspriet — bowsprit.
borgen — borrow.
Degen [*Thain* or *Thane*] warrior; now used generally to mean Sword.
eigen — own.
Felge — felly *or* felloe.
Fliege — fly.
fliegen — to fly.
Flegel — flail.
folgen — to follow.
gähnen — to yawn.
Galgen — gallows.
gar — [yare, well done], very, quite.
Garbe — yarrow.
Garn — yarn.
Gäscht — yeast.
gäten — to weed.
ge- (sign of Past Participle) y-; as in *yclept* from *clepe* to call; *yclad* from clothe, etc.
gegen — gain- (*as in* gain-sayer); a-gain-st.
gelb — yellow.
genug — enough.
gestern — yesterday.
Hagel — hail.
heilig — holy, hallow.
Honig — honey.
Hügel — hill.
-ig (Affix) -y; *as in*:
blutig — bloody.
Jugend [Anglo-Sax. *yugoth*] youth.
karg — chary.
liegen — to lie; er lag he lay; legen to lay; Lager layer, lair.
lügen — to lie (speak falsely).
Magd, Mayd — maid.
Magen — maw, stomach.
mögen — may.
Mergel — marl.
Morgen — morrow, morning.
Norwegen [north-ways] Norway; *whence*:
Norweger — Nor*weg*ian.
Nagel — nail.
nagen — to gnaw.
Pfennig — penny.
Regel — rule.
Regen — rain.
regnen — to rain.
Rogen — roe (of fish).
Roggen — rye.
Säge — saw (a tool).

sagen — to say;
whence:
Sage — saying, saw, *as in* "wise saws".
schlagen [slay] to beat.
schwelgen — to swallow, swill, revel.
Segel — sail.
Siegel [Lat. *sigillum*] seal.
Sorge [sorrow] care.
Stegreif — stirrup.
Tag — day.
Talg — tallow.
Teig — dough.
tragen [draw, drain, trail, train, tray] to carry.

Trog — trough.
Vogel — fowl, bird.
Wagen — waggon, wain.
wägen — to weigh;
(*whence:*
wiegen [wag] to rock; *and*
Wiege — cradle).
Weg — way.
weg — away.
würgen [worry] to strangle, massacre.
Ziegel [Lat. *tegulum*] tile.
ziehen (*whence* zog) tug, tow.
-zig* (Affix) -ty [*from* zehen *or* zehn ten]; *thus:*
zwanzig [twain-ten] twenty.

IV.—LIP-SOUNDS.

German.—P—Pf—B—F, V—W.
English.—P—B—F—V—W.

Even in English there are many words in which the five Lip-Sounds interchange. For example, it does not sound well to our ears to say, "A cat has nine lifes;" so we say *lives*, changing F into V. So also: *five*, *fifth*, *fifteen*, *fifty*, etc. Again, from the Latin *scribere* to write, we have *scripture*, *scrivener*, *scribble*,

---

* In this -zig we have a good example of changes:—

Greek …… *dek*-a.
Latin ……… *dec*-em.
German …… -zig, zeh-en.
Gothic … .. *taih*-uns.
Anglo Saxon *taa*-n.
English …… *-ty*, *te*-n, *tee*-n.

scrawl, in which P, V, B, and W do service by turns; and in German *scripture* is Schrift, so that we may add F to the list.—So also, *scrape*, *scrub*, *scurf*, *scurvy*, *scour*, or (as it was spelt formerly) *scowr*, where the consonant near R is either P, B, F. V, or W.

[*N.B.* Scour and Scowr.—Notice that our sound of W is in reality a short U or OO, so that *doo-ell, too-ice* pronounced quickly, will make the words *dwell,* and *twice.* Now the Romans represented the Vowel-Sound OO, and the Consonant W by only one letter; which at first they wrote pointed, like V, and afterwards rounded, like U. Hence the confusion of V and U (originally one letter=OO, and W) in our old books; *e.g.*: "Speak vnto thy seruant." We call our W "double-U," whilst the French call it "double-V," which it really is in shape. The French way of writing the sound *oo,* as in "boȯt," is *ou*; so when they wish to represent our W, having no W in their own language, they write, *ou*; *e.g.*: Edouard, for Edward].

Obs.—The German U, the French *ou*, and the English W, are made by pushing the Lips forward, and making them nearly touch; if they did touch, the sound would be B; hence, our *screw,* where the lips *nearly* meet, becomes in German Schraube, where they actually *do* meet.

11.—F *changes into* V.

eilf *or* elf	eleven.	Ofen	oven.
Faß [vat]	vessel, cask.	Schaufel	shovel.
Hafen	haven.	Teufel	devil.
Hafer	haver, oats.	zwölf	twelve.
liefern	de-liver.		

12.—F, Pf *change into* P.

Affe	ape.
Apfel	apple.
auf	up.
Bischof	bishop.
Dampf [damp]	steam.
Dampfschiff	steamship.
dämpfen	to damp.
gaffen	to gape.
greifen	to gripe.
Hanf	hemp.
Harfe	harp.
Haufen	heap.
helfen	to help.
hoffen	to hope.
hüpfen	to hop.
impfen	to imp, graft, inoculate.
Krampf	cramp.
Kufe	coop.
Küfer	cooper.
Kupfer	copper.
laufen [leap, *loup*]	to run.
offen	open.
Pfad	path.
Pfahl	pale, pole, pile.
pfählen	to impale.
Pfand	pawn.
Pfanne	pan.
Pfarre	parish, living.
Pfarrer	parson.
Pfau [Lat. *pavo*]	pea cock, *or* pea-hen.
Pfeffer	pepper.
Pfeife	pipe.

Pfeiler	pillar.
Pfennig	penny.
Pfersig, *or* Pfirsche	the *Persian* fruit, *Peach*.
Pflanze	plant.
Pflaster	plaster.
Pflaume	plum.
Pflicht [plight, pledge]	duty *or* obligation.
Pflock	plug, peg.
pflücken	to pluck.
Pflug	plough.
Pforte [Lat. *porta*]	portal, gate
Pfoste	post.
Pfote	paw.
Pfund	pound.
reif	ripe.
Saft	sap.
Schaf	sheep.
schaffen	to shape, create, work.
scharf	sharp.
Schiff	ship.
Schiffer	shipper, skipper.
Schlaf	sleep.
schlüpfen	to slip.
Schnepfe	snipe.
Schweif [sweep]	tail.
Seife	soap.
stampfen	to stamp.
Stiefvater	stepfather.
stopfen	to stop up, to stuff.
Stöpfel	stopple, stopper.

Streif	stripe, strip, *or* streak.
streifen	to stripe, strip; sweep along, roam about.
Stufe	step.
Stumpf	stump.
Sumpf	swamp.
tief	deep.
triefen	to drip.
Tropfen	a drop; *whence*:
tröpfeln	to drip, trickle, dribble.
Waffen	weapon.
werfen [warp]	to throw.
zapfen	to tap.
Zapfer	tapster.

13.—P, Pf *change into* B.

doppelt [Lat. *duplex*]	double.
Knopf	knob *or* button.
Pavian	baboon.
Pfuscher	botcher, bungler.
Polster	bolster.
Rippe	rib.
Sipp-schaft	sib, kin.
Stoppel	stubble.

14.—B *changes into* F, V, *or* W.

ab	off.
Abend	even-tide, evening.
berauben	to bereave.
Biber	beaver.
Dieb	thief.
eben	even.
er-lauben	to al-low.
falb	fallow, a pale yellow.
Fieber	fever.
Garbe	yarrow.
geben	to give.
gelb	yellow.
Grab	grave.
graben	to grub, *or* dig; conn. with the Greek *grapho*, I carve, en-*grave*, write.
grob	gruff, coarse, rude.
haben	to have; *whence*
Habe	property.
Haber	haver, oats; *whence*:
Habersack	haversack.
halb	half.
heben	to heave, lift.
Herbst [harvest]	autumn.
Kalb	calf.
kleben	to cleave *or* stick.
Knabe [knave]	boy.
Laub	leaf, foliage.
leben	to live; *whence*
Leben	life.
Leber	liver.
Laib	loaf.

Leib [life]	body; *whence*
Leibgarde	lifeguard, *or* bodyguard.
Liebe	love.
lieb	dear: "I would as *lief* do this"; *also* lieber rather: "I would *liefer* do that."
Nabel	navel.
ob	if; *also*, ab-ove; *whence*:
oben, ober	over; *also*:
Obdach [overthatch]	covert, shelter; *and*:
Obsicht	oversight, supervision.
Rabe	raven.
Salbe	salve.
schaben	to shave.
schnauben	to snuff, snort.
Schwalbe	swallow.
selb	self.
Sieb	sieve.
sieben	to sift.
sieben	seven.
Silber	silver.
Sperling (for Sperb-ling)	sparrow.
Stab	staff.
sterben [starve]	to die.
streben	to strive; *whence*:
Streben	strife; a striving, *or* endeavour.
taub	deaf.
Taube	dove.
treiben	to drive.
übel	evil.
über	over.
überleben	to overlive, survive.
übersilbern	to silver over.
vergeben	to forgive.
weben	to weave; *whence*:
Weib	wife; (as we have *spin-ster* for maid).

V.—VOICE-SOUNDS OR VOWELS.

Two words are enough to show how the Vowels interchange: Sing, Sang, Sung, Song; Get (or, as some say, "git"), Gat, Gotten. Here, within the compass of two little words, we have changes rung on the five principal Vowels, A, E, I, O, U.

It is natural that the Vowels (which are only "different ways of holding the mouth open to let the Voice pass through") should slide easily into one another. It has been remarked (*Penny Cyclopædia*, article "Alphabet") that the Mewing of a Cat is nothing but a gradual passing from Vowel to Vowel in what is called their natural order, namely the following:

1. I in *machine*, (EE in *eel*).
2. È in the French *père*, (AI in the English *air*, *pair*).
3. A in *ah*, *papa*.
4. O in *oh*, *more*.
5. U in *true* (OO in *root*).

Let any one slowly pronounce the following: *ee—ay—ah—oh—oo*, or even *ee—ah—oo*; he cannot fail to mimic the language above-mentioned. (The Germans call mewing, miau-en, taking the three principal notes, the first, the middle and the last [*i*, *a*, *u*, or *ee*, *ah*, *oo*] to represent the whole strain.)

Double Vowels (Diphthongs), such as *au*, *ei*, etc., are combinations of two Vowels to form a mixed sound. Thus the German *Au* is the combination of Nos. 3 & 5, pronounced quickly; and sounding like *ou* in *mouth*; so that the German *Haus*, *Maus*, and the English *house*, *mouse* are pronounced alike. *Ei* is a similar combination of Nos. 3 & 1; so that *mein*, *fein*, are sounded like our *mine*, *fine*.

We give here a few of the commonest and most striking Changes of Vowels from German to English.

[*N.B.*—The most remarkable are: No. 16, where the *broad* sounds A, Au, O, change into the *narrow* sound E; and Nos. 17 and 18, where the *narrow* sound E changes into the *broad* sounds A, O.]

15.—A *changes into* O.

ab [Scot. *aff*]	off.
alt [Scot. *auld*]	old.
an	on.
bald [bold; *whence* Baltic]	brisk, quick, soon.
Band	bond.
blasen	to blow; *whence* blas-t.
brach	broke.
brachte	brought.
dachte	thought.
Drang	throng.
Falte	fold.
Ge-sang	song.
halten	to hold
Kamm	comb.
laden	to load.
lang	long.
Nase	nose.
Pappel	poplar.
Pfahl	pole.
sanft	soft.
sprach	spoke.
Thaler	dollar.
Wald	wold, wood.
Zange	tongs.

16.—A, Au, O *change into* E, Ea, Ee.

a.—A *into* E, Ea, Ee.

Aal	eel.
Abend	even, evening.
Balg	bellows, belly.
Bart	beard.
da, dar	there.
dann	then.
Fasan	pheasant.
Gast	guest.
Ge-stank	stench.
Hanf	hemp.
ja	yea, yes.
Jahr	year.
Kastanie	chestnut.
Kasten	chest.
klar	clear.
lassen	to let.
mager	meagre, lean.
Mahl	meal, repast.
Matte	mead, meadow.
Nacken	neck.
Rath	rede, advice.
Rast	rest.
Saat	seed.
Schaf	sheep.
Schlaf	sleep.
schwach	weak.
Sprache	speech.
Stahl	steel.
Stamm	stem.
Stadt, statt	stead.
Straße	street.
That	deed.
Waffen	weapon.
wann?	when?
Wrack	wreck.
Zwanzig	twenty.

b.—Au *into* E, Ea, Ee.

auch eke, also.
Auge eye.
Baum [beam] tree.
berauben to bereave.
Haupt head.
kaufen [cheapen] to buy.
Laub leaf, foliage.
Lauch leek.
laufen [leap] to run.
Loch [leak] hole.
Rauch reek, smoke.
Saum [seam] hem.
taub deaf.
taufen to steep, dip; *hence* to baptize.
traurig [dreary] sad.

c.—O *into* E, Ea, Ee.

Bohne bean.
Brod bread.
brodlos breadless, destitute.
dort there.
Floh flea.
groß great.
hören to hear; *whence*
horchen to hearken.
Loth [lead] plummet, ounce.
Noth need, distress.
oder [either] or.
Ohr ear.
Ost east.
Ostern Easter.
roth red.
Strom stream.
schwören to swear.
Tod death.
todt dead.
wo? where?
Woche week.
Wolke [welkin] cloud.
zwölf twelve.

17.—E *changes into* A.

Engel angel.
Erle alder.
Esche ash-tree.
Esel [Lat. *asell-us*] ass.
Espe asp *or* aspen.
fern far.
fest fast, firm.
fett fat.
Flegel flail.
gegen gain (as in *gain*-say), a-*gain*-st.
Heft haft, handle.
Herz heart.
Lerche larch.
Lerche lark.
letzt last.
letzter latter.
merken to mark.

Messe [Latin *Missa*, that is dis-mission]	the Mass.
Pergament	parchment.
quetschen	to quash, squash.
Regen	rain.
Schmerz [smart]	pain.
Segel	sail.
Stempel	stamp.
sterben* [starve]	to die.
Stern*	star.
Theer*	tar.
Weg	way, road.
weg	away.
werfen [warp]	to throw.
Wespe	wasp.
Zwerch	a-thwart.
Zwerg	dwarf.

18.—E, ee, eh, ä, ei, ie *change into* O, oa, oe, oo, ou.

a.—E, ee, eh, ä *into* O, oa, oe, ou.

blähen	to blow, puff.
Brett	board.
gehen	to go.
krähen	to crow.
Lehm	loam.
Lehn, Lehen [loan]	feoff, fee.
Lehre	lore, learning.
mähen	to mow.
mehr	more.
Reh	roe.
Rhede [roads, as in Yarmouth Roads]	wharf.
säen	to sow.
schelten	to scold.
Schlehe	sloe.
Schnee	snow.
Schwäre	a sore, ulcer.
schwer	sore, heavy.
Schwert	sword.
Seele	soul.†
sehr [sore]	very.
Weh	woe.
Welt	world.
wer?	who?
Werk	work.
Wermuth	wormwood.
werth	worth.
zäh	tough.
Zehe	toe.

* Theer, tar; Stern, star; fern, far, etc. The tendency to change *er* into *ar* may still be seen in the way we pronounce *clerk, serjeant, Derby;* namely as *clark, sarjeant, Darby;* also in "larned, varmin, sarvant, astarn, etc."

† "Not on thy *sole*, but on thy *soul*, harsh Jew,
"Thou makest thy knife keen."
Merchant of Venice, iv. 1.

In German the one would be Sohle, the other Seele.

b.—Ei *into* O, oa.

beide	both.
Bein	bone.
breit	broad.
Eiche	oak.
Eid	oath.
eigen	own.
ein	one; *whence*
allein [all-one]	alone.
Geist	ghost, spirit.
Geiß	goat.
heil	whole.
Heil	wholeness, health, salvation.
heilig	holy.
heilsam	wholesome.
heim	home.
heiß	hot.
Kleid	cloth-ing, dress.
kleiden	to clothe.
Laib	loaf.
Leitstern	loadstar; (*from*
leiten	to lead).
meist	most.
nein	no.
Reihe	a row.
Reif	rope, loop, ring.
Seife	soap.
Speiche	spoke (of a wheel).
Stein	stone.
streichen	to stroke.
Teig	dough.
theilen	to dole out.
Treiber	drover.
weiß	wot.
zwei	two.
Zeichen	token.

c.—ie *into* O, oo, ou.

biegen	to bow, bend.
fließen	to flow.
Liebe	love.
lieben	to love.
schieben	to shove.
schießen	to shoot.
sprießen	to sprout.
trieb	drove.
ver-lieren	to lose; *whence*
ver-loren	lorn, for-lorn, lost.
vier	four.
ziehen	to tow.

19.—O *changes into* U.

Dolch	dudgeon, dagger.
Donner	thunder.
doppelt	double (pron. *dubble.*)
Drossel	thrush.

fördern	to further.
grob	gruff, coarse.
Höcker	hunch.
Horst	hurst, (copse).
Knöchel	knuckle.
Mord	murder.
Most	must, (young wine).
Nonne	nun.
Pflock	plug, peg.
Rost	rust.
Schorf	scurf.
solch [*from*	so-lich, so-like] such.
Sommer	summer.
sondern	to sunder.
Sonne	sun.
Sporn	spur.
Stoff	stuff.
Stoppel	[Latin *stipula*] stubble.
stottern	to stutter.
Tonne	tun.
Torf	turf.
Trommel	drum.
Trompete	trumpet.
Trost [trust]	comfort.
vorder	further, more forward.
Zopf	tuft.

20.—U, ü *change into* O.

blühen	to blow, bloom.
Bruder	brother.
Büchse	box.
Burg	borough.
durch	thorough.
Dutzend	dozen.
Fuchs	fox.
für	for.
Furt	ford.
Futter	fodder.
glühen	to glow; *whence*
Gluth	a glow.
Gurgel	gorge, throat.
hüpfen	to hop.
Kupfer	copper.
Kutsche	coach.
Mutter	mother.
nun	now.
Pfuscher	botcher, bungler.
prüfen	to prove.
Ruthe	rod.
Schuß	a shot (from a bow or gun).
Schütze	a shot, marksman; (*whence* Scharf-schütze sharp-shooter).
schwur	swore.
Sturm	storm.
thun	to do.
Thür	door.
über	over.
Wunder	wonder.
Würde	worth; *whence*
würdig	worthy.
Wurm	worm.
Zunge	tongue.

PART II.

LIST OF PREFIXES.

A PREFIX is a word or syllable put *before* a word, thus making a new word with some difference of meaning; as: *un-able, en-able, dis-able; a-live, en-liven, out-live;* where the words or syllables *un, en, dis, a, out,* are all Prefixes.

VERB-PREFIXES.

A Verb-Prefix is a word or syllable, which, placed before any word, makes a *Compound Verb* of it.

(*a*). Compare the following words, all from the Latin verb *pōn* or *pŏs*=to place: Position, Compose, Depose, Dispose, Expose, Impose, Interpose, Oppose, Preposition, Propose, Postpone, Repose, Suppose, Transpose. A Latin scholar can trace the different meanings of these words to the Latin Prefixes *con, de, dis, ex,* etc. But in the following words: Overdone, Underdone, Outdone, Undone, which are purely English, any one can see how each of the Prefixes *over, under, out, un,* alters the meaning of the word *done.* The same in "I *came,* I saw, I *overcame*"; also in the following: A-base, Be-sprinkle, Counter-act, Dis-courage, En-courage, For-bid, Fore-tell, Gain-say, In-lay, Ill-treat, Mal-treat, Mis-manage, Out-strip, Over-take, Pre-pay, Re-pay, Sub-join, Un-lock, Under-mine, Uphold, With-hold.

(*b*). Verb-Prefixes are divided into Separable and Inseparable. For example, to *illtreat* a boy, is the same as to *maltreat* him; but, though you can say, "They *treated* the child *ill*," you cannot say, "They *treated* the child *mal*." *Ill* is, therefore, a Separable, *mal* an Inseparable Prefix.

(*c*). Some Verb-Prefixes are in one of their meanings Separable, in another Inseparable. Thus, to *lift* a man *up* is the same as to *uplift* him; but to *set* him *up* is not the same as to *upset* him. Up in *uplift* is Separable; up in *upset* is Inseparable.—In the following Lists, the four words durch, über, um, and unter, will be found both among Separable and Inseparable Prefixes.

(*d*). Most of the Inseparable Prefixes are *not* words by themselves, so that they could not stand in a sentence apart from the Verb (just as *mal*, not being an English word, did not make sense by itself). The Separable Prefixes *are* words of themselves, some of them Prepositions, and some Adverbs (like *ill* in *illtreat*).

N.B.—A Verb-Prefix in German is often represented in English,

(1) by a *separate word*; as, er=lassen, to let *off*;
(2) by a *Verb-Affix* (syllable placed *after* a word);

as:—

From	Are formed by Prefixes	by Affixes
Seele soul	be=seelen	to anim-*ate* [Lat. *anima* soul].
Frucht fruit	be=fruchten	to fructi-*fy*, fertil-*ize*.
größer greater	ver=größern	to magni-*fy* [Lat. *magnus* great].
süß sweet	ver=süßen	to sweet-*en*.

So that the tail in English often does what the head does in German. We here give examples of the Eng-

lish Affixes which answer to some of the German Prefixes (especially to Be= and Er=).

English Verbs formed by Affixes.

By the Affix *-ate.*

From the Nouns *anima* (soul), *greg-* (flock), *oner-* (burden), *regula* (rule): to animate, congregate, exonerate, regulate.
From the Adjs. *liber* (free), *melior* (better), *timid*, *valid*: to liberate, ameliorate, intimidate, invalidate.
From the Verbs *dict-* (speak), *duc-* (lead), *labor-*, *lev-* (lift): to dictate, educate, elaborate, elevate.

By the Affix *-fy.*

From the Nouns *mort-* (death), *ædi-* (building), *cruc-* (cross): to mortify, edify, crucify.
From the Adjs. *vile*, etc.: to vilify, justify, rectify, fortify, satisfy.
From the Verbs *horre-* (shudder), *terre-* (scare), *stupe-* (be astounded): to horrify, terrify, stupefy.

By the Affix *-ize.*

From the Nouns *poet*, etc.: to poetize, scandalize, victimize, idolize.
From the Adjs. *real*, etc.: to realize, tranquillize, civilize, Anglicize, Romanize.

By the Affix *-en.*

From the Nouns *length*, etc.: to lengthen, strengthen, heighten, frighten.
From the Adjs. *black*, etc.: to blacken, whiten, darken, brighten, loosen, tighten, thicken, widen.

The Affixes *-ate* and *-fy* [from *fic* or *fac*, to make] come from the Latin; *-ize* is Greek; *-en* is purely English.

Inseparable Verb-Prefixes.

1.—Be=.

[Be= is contr. from bei *by;* as our *be-side, be-times,* mean *by the side of, by times.*]

Be= signifies, to *furnish with* (something), to *give* or *apply* (something) *to.* Thus, beflügeln is, to *furnish with* wings (Flügel); sich bemühen to *give* oneself trouble (Mühe); from zahlen to pay (money), we have bezahlen to pay (a person), that is, to *give* payment *to.*

So, in English, to Bedew is to *furnish* (or cover) *with* dew; to Bewitch a man, is to *apply* witchery *to* him; to Bewail, Beweep or Bemoan one's fate or friends, is to wail, weep, or moan *for* them, that is, to *apply* the action of wailing, etc., *to* them.

English Equivalents:—the Prefix *be-*; the Affixes *-fy, -ize.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
decken [deck]	to cover	bedecken	bedeck, cover over.
denken	to think	bedenken	bethink, think upon, consider; *whence* Bedenken consideration.
Flügel [*from* fliegen to fly]	wing	beflügeln	furnish with wings, to wing.
frei	free	befreien	to free, to set free.
Frucht	fruit	befruchten	fructify, fertilize.
gehren	to yearn, long	begehren	long for, crave; *whence* Begier desire, craving.
		beginnen	begin.
Geleit [leiten to lead]	an escort	begleiten	to escort, accompany.
Glück [*for* Ge-lück]	luck, prosperity	beglücken	give prosperity to, bless, favour.
grüßen	to greet	begrüßen	give greeting to, greet.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
herrschen [*from* Herr] to lord it, to be master	beherrschen lord it over, be master of, govern.
Herz heart	(beherzen put heart into, inspirit); *and* beherzigen lay to heart.
kennen [ken] to know	bekennen own *or* admit as known, acknowledge.
Kleid clothing, dress	bekleiden put clothes upon, clothe.
Kranz garland, wreath	bekränzen put a garland upon, wreathe, enwreathe.
laden to lade	beladen to load, burden.
reuen [rue] to repent, be sorry	bereuen repent of, be sorry for, rue.
rühren to move	berühren apply motion to, touch.
schauen to look	beschauen look at, contemplate.
Schutz protection, shelter	beschützen protect, shelter.
stürzen to rush down, fall	bestürzen give a shock to, stun, shock, dismay.
treten [tread] to step	betreten step upon; tread upon, trample.
wahr [Lat. *ver-us*] true, sure	bewähren verify; *and* bewahren keep safe.
zahlen to pay (money)	bezahlen pay (money *to*) a person.
zwingen to press, force	bezwingen master by force, subdue.

2.—Durch (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes, (*b*) and (*c*)," page 37.

As to *upset* (Insep.) is not the same as to *set up* (Sep.), so ich durchgehe is not the same as ich gehe durch:

thus "die Pferde durchgehen (Insep.) den Wald = the horses *walk-through* the wood"; but "die Pferde gehen mit ihm durch (Sep.) = the horses *walk off* with him," that is, they *run away* with him.

N.B.—In general, when the four Prefixes Durch, Ueber, Um, Unter are Inseparable, the Verb (even though Intransitive before) becomes a *Transitive* Verb: as, ich durchging (or umging) die Stadt = I walked-through (or walked round) the town. When they are Separable, if the Verb was *Intransitive* before, it generally remains so: as, ich ging durch (or ging um) = I walked-off (or walked about).

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*Through*, *across*, *over*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
dringen [throng] to press, push	durchdringen push through (anything), pierce, penetrate.
gehen to go	durchgehen pass through (something).
laufen to run	durchlaufen run all over (something), overrun, overspread.

3.—Ent-.

a.—Removal, Deprivation.

Haupt=head, enthaupten=to *remove* the head *from*, to *deprive of* the head; or, as we very curiously say, *behead*. Schuld=guilt, blame; entschuldigen to *remove* blame *from*, to free from guilt, justify or excuse.

Ent= often stands in contrast with Be= and Er=: thus, bekleiden=to *clothe*, entkleiden=to *unclothe*; er= mannet Euch zum Kampfe=*man* yourselves to the combat, er ist ganz entmannt=he is quite *unmanned*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*un-*, *dis-*, *de-*, *ex-* or *e-*; *off.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
decken [Latin *teg* or *tec*]	to cover	entdecken	dis-cover, un-cover, de-tect.
Ehre	honour	entehren	to dishonour, degrade.
fahren	to travel	entfahren	slip out of, drop from, escape (one's lips, etc.)
fallen	to fall, drop	entfallen	slip out of, drop from, escape (one's lips, etc.)
falten	to fold	entfalten	unfold.
Kraft	strength	entkräften	disable.
Mann	man (mascul. = *vir*)	entmannen	unman, emasculate.
Mensch	man (=*homo*)	entmenschen	inhumanize.
reißen	to pluck, tear	entreißen	pluck, wrench *or* wrest out (of one's grasp).
rennen	to run	entrinnen	run away, get off.
Schuld	guilt	entschuldigen	exculpate, excuse.
setzen	to set, place	entsetzen	displace; sich entsetzen shrink back, be horrified.
waffnen [weapon]	to arm	entwaffnen	disarm.
weichen	to give way	entweichen	retire, make one's escape.
wickeln	to fold, wrap	entwickeln	unfold, develop.
wohnen	to dwell	entwöhnen	wean (from a habit); see "ge-wöhnen," page 46.

b.— { *Passing into a new condition.* *Beginning* (to be or do).

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*up*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
brennen	to burn	entbrennen	burn up, catch fire.
flammen	to flame, flare, blaze	entflammen	flare up, blaze up.
springen	to spring	entspringen	spring up, take its rise, originate.
stehen	to stand	entstehen	spring up, take its rise, originate.

4.—Er-.

In the Prefix Er-, there is always a notion of *completeness*, of *arriving* at your object, of *getting* something done. Thus, schlagen is to beat, erschlagen to beat thoroughly, *to slay*.

a.— { *Doing a thing out and out, thoroughly;*
" " " *till you gain your end;*
" " " *to death.* }

Engl. Equiv.:—the Prefixes *en-*, *a-*, *de-*, *ex-*; the Affix *-en*; *out*, *off*, *up*, *down*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
barm weich	} tender, soft	erbarmen erweichen	} soften, melt (the heart, etc.).
blicken	to look, glance	erblicken	get sight of, descry, espy.
dröhnen	to boom	erdröhnen	thunder out.
fahren [fare]	to travel	erfahren	(travel till you see), arrive at the knowledge of, learn, experience.
frisch [frisk]	fresh, brisk	erfrischen	freshen, refresh.
gehen	to go	ergehen	issue, turn out, happen.
(götzen=*gaudeo*)		ergötzen	gladden, delight.
greifen	to grasp (at)	ergreifen	get hold of, grasp, clutch.
heben	to heave, lift	erheben	uplift, elevate.
hohe, hoch	high	erhöhen	heighten.
jagen	to hunt	erjagen	hunt down, get by hunting.
klar	clear, plain	erklären	declare, explain.
lassen	to let	erlassen	let off, let go.
leben	to live	erleben	live until, live to see.
legen	to lay	erlegen	lay (anything) down, lay dead, slay.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
matt	weary, faint [*whence* check-mate]	ermatten	to weary, wear out, knock up.
neu	new.	erneuen	renew.
reichen	to reach out (towards anything)	erreichen	(reach so far as to get), reach, attain.
schauen	[show] to look, gaze	erschauen	(look so as to see), perceive, espy.
schlagen	to beat	erschlagen	beat to death, slay.
steigen	to climb	ersteigen	climb up, scale, mount.
treten	to tread	ertreten	tread to death, crush.
warten	to wait	erwarten	wait for, await.
würgen	[worry] to choke	erwürgen	choke to death, strangle, massacre.
zählen	[tell] to count	erzählen	recount, relate, tell.

b.—Becoming, Getting.

For example, scheinen to *be in* sight, *be* visible; erscheinen to *come into* sight, *become* visible. Kennen to know, erkennen to *get to* know; as, "sie erkannten sie, daß sie mit Jesus gewesen waren = they *took knowledge of* them, that they had been with Jesus."

ENGL. EQUIV.: —*get*, *grow*, *fall*; *a-* (as in a-wake), etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
blaß / bleich	[blank, bleach], pale	erblassen / erbleichen	grow pale, blench.
blühen	to bloom	erblühen	break into blossom.
kennen	[ken] to know	erkennen	get to know, perceive, take cognizance of, recognize.
krank	sick, ill	erkranken	fall sick.
leiden	to (*be in* pain), suffer	erleiden	(*come into* suffering), undergo.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
liegen	to lie, be lying	erliegen	lie down, sink, succumb.
matt	faint, weary	ermatten	grow faint *or* weary.
scheinen	(to *be* in sight), to shine, seem	erscheinen	(*come* in sight), appear.
staunen	[stound] to *be in* a stound, in amazement	erstaunen	*fall into* a stound, be astounded; *whence* Erstaunen astonishment.
wachen	to wake *or* watch	erwachen	wake up, awake.
wachsen	to wax, grow	erwachsen	grow up.

5.—Ge-.

Ge- somewhat *strengthens* the original notion of the Verb: thus, denken to think, gedenken to *keep* thinking, to bear in mind; gedenke mein=remember me: bieten *to bid*, in a variety of senses, but gebieten emphatically *to command*.

This Prefix has a different shade of meaning with almost every verb to which it is joined, and in some cases does not add much to the original meaning.

Of the five words ge-bär-en, ge-ling-en, ge-ness-en, ge-scheh-en and ge-winn-en, the Roots bär, ling, nes, scheh and winn are no longer to be found separately.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
[bär-	conn. with *to bear*]	gebären	bear, bring forth.
bieten	to bid	gebieten	(bid, with authority), command.
denken	to think	gedenken	bear in mind, remember, intend.
fallen	to fall	gefallen	fall in with (one's wishes), please.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
langen	to long for	gelangen	reach, arrive.
[ling-	conn. with *luck*]	gelingen	turn out well, prosper.
		genesen	get over, recover.
		geschehen	come to pass, happen, be done.
stehen	to stand	gestehen	(*stand to* a thing, *keep to* it), own, confess.
wahr	true, sure	gewähren	secure (for any one), guarantee, grant.
warten	to wait	gewarten	wait for, expect, be on the look-out for.
[winn-	conn. with *win*]	gewinnen	win, gain.
wohnen	to dwell	gewöhnen	[wont] accustom: [so our *habit* from the Latin *habitare* to dwell].

6.—Miß-.

Miß-, expresses *Wrong, Failure, Mistake.*
ENGL. EQUIV.:—*mis-, dis-, ill-.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
brauchen	to use	mißbrauchen	misuse, abuse.
gefallen (see p.45)	to please	mißfallen	displease.
gönnen	to allow (without grudging or envy)	mißgönnen	disallow, envy, grudge.
greifen	to gripe, grasp	mißgreifen	mistake; ("get hold of the *wrong* end of the stick").
handeln	to handle, treat	mißhandeln	ill-treat.
leiten	to lead	mißleiten	mislead.
thun	to do	mißthun	do amiss; *whence* Missethat misdeed.
trauen	to trust	mißtrauen	mistrust, distrust.
verstehen	to understand	mißverstehen	misunderstand.

7.—Ueber- (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes, (*b*) and (*c*)," page 37.

Ueber, when Separable, keeps more to its literal meaning of *over* or *across*; while Ueber Inseparable, as here, often gives a figurative meaning to the Verb: thus, from treten to tread or step, ich trat über (Separ.) is *literal*, "I stept over, I stept across;" while ich übertrat is *figurative*, "I overstept, trans-gressed, tres-passed or violated (a law)."

In the following List, the words translated "abandon, ponder, translate, commit, exaggerate, transgress," are all figurative.

See "2.—Durch, Inseparable, *N.B.*," page 41.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*over-*, *trans-*, *entirely*, *too much*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
lassen	to let, leave	überlassen	let go; leave to one's fate, *abandon*.
legen	to lay	überlegen	turn over in one's mind, *ponder*.
setzen	to set, put	übersetzen	*translate*.
tragen	[drag] to carry	übertragen	make (or hand) over, transfer; *commit*.
treiben	to drive	übertreiben	overdrive; *exaggerate*.
treten	to tread, step	übertreten	overstep; *transgress*.

8.—Um- (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes, (*b*) and (*c*)," page 37.

Um Inseparable makes the Verb *Transitive*: thus, "sie umstehen (Insep.) den Löwen=they *stand-round* (or *surround*) the lion"; while "sie stehen um" (Sep.), is merely "they *stand about*, or *stand by*."

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*round, about, circum-.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
Arm	arm	umarmen put the arm round (somebody), em-brace, [*bras* is the French for *arm*; Latin *brachium*].
gehen	to go	umgehen go or walk round (something).
stehen	to stand	umstehen stand round, surround.
schiffen [ship]	to sail	umschiffen sail round, circumnavigate.
schreiben [scribe]	to write	umschreiben circumscribe.

9.—Unter- (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes, (*b*) and (*c*)," page 37.

Unter has two meanings: that of the English *under*; and that of the Latin *inter* or the French *entre* = *between*, *among*. Unter Inseparable, as here, has oftenest the latter meaning. Thus: "ich halte ihn unter (Sep.) = I *hold* him *under*;" but "ich unterhalte ihn (Insep.) = I *entertain* him" [French *entretenir* from *entre* among, and *tenir* to hold].

See "2.—Durch Inseparable, *N.B.*," page 41.

Unter Inseparable generally gives the Verb a *figurative* meaning: See "7.—Ueber Inseparable."

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*inter-*, *enter-*, *under-*, &c.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
brechen	to break	unterbrechen burst in between, break (one) off in the middle; *interrupt*.
halten	to hold, keep.	unterhalten keep amongst you; *entertain*, *maintain*.

10.—Ver-.

Ver- is connected with the English *for-* in such words as forbid, fordo, forget, forgive, forgo, forlorn, forsake, forspent, forsworn. Also with the Latin *per-* in perdition, perish, pardon (*per-donare*). Thus:

Latin.	English.	German.
donare perdonare	give forgive	geben vergeben

a.— { Removal; Destruction; Denial.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*for-*, *de-*; *away*, *up*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
bergen	[bury] to cover, hide	verbergen	cover up, conceal.
bieten	to bid	verbieten	forbid.
brennen	to burn	verbrennen	(destroy by burning) burn up.
decken	[deck] to cover	verdecken	(remove out of sight by covering), cover up.
derb	compact, solid	verderben	destroy, spoil.
fallen	to fall	verfallen	fall away, decay [Lat. *de-*, *cad*] decline.
fehlen	to fail, err	verfehlen	lose by erring, miss (the right time), etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
geben	to give	vergeben	forgive, pardon [Lat. *perdona*].
gehen	to go	vergehen	pass away, perish.
heißen [hight]	to name, tell, bid	verheißen	(bid or speak a thing away from yourself to another), promise.
klingen	to sound, ring	verklingen	die away, (said of a sound).
lassen	to let, leave	verlassen	leave alone, forsake.
leihen	to lend	verleihen	lend away.
(Old German) lieren, or liesen	to lose	verlieren	lose; *whence* verloren, *for-lorn*, and *lorn*.
schmachten	to pine	verschmachten	pine away.
schwören	to swear	verschwören	deny *or* renounce by swearing, forswear; sich verschwören (swear oneself away), conspire.
senden	to send	versenden	send forth.
sprechen	to speak	versprechen	(see verheißen), promise.
streichen [strike, stroke]	sweep, glide	verstreichen	glide away, elapse, run out (as, "your time is run out)."
zeihen,	to blame, accuse	verzeihen	(remove blame from), to excuse.

b.—Mistake, Falsehood.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*mis-, amiss, ill, astray.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
denken	to think	verdenken	misunderstand, take in ill part.
färben	to dye	verfärben	dye a wrong colour, spoil in dying.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
führen	to lead	verführen	mislead, lead astray, seduce.
kennen	to know	verkennen	misknow, misunderstand.

c.—Change into a new condition.

Sometimes merely *strengthening* the original notion of a Verb.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—Prefix *en-;* Affixes *-en*, *-fy*, *-ize*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
breit	broad, wide	verbreiten	broaden, widen, spread.
edel	noble	veredeln	ennoble.
Ehre	honour	verehren	do honour to, revere, venerate.
ein	one	vereinen	bring into unity, unite.
färben	to dye	verfärben	change the colour of by dyeing.
genug	enough	(vergenügen) vergnügen	(let one have enough), satisfy, gratify.
groß	great	vergrößern	enlarge, magnify.
lang	long	verlängern	lengthen.
mögen	may	vermögen	be enabled, have the power.
nehmen	to take	vernehmen	(take into the mind), become aware of, perceive, hear, comprehend.
schön	beautiful	verschönen, verschönern	beautify, embellish.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
setzen	to set, to place	versetzen	(change the place of), transpose; ("turn the tables upon"), reply.
stehen	to stand	verstehen	understand.
Stein	stone	versteinern	turn into stone, petrify.
süß	sweet	versüßen	sweeten.
trauen	to trust	vertrauen	entrust *or* confide (to some one).
wickeln	to fold, wrap	verwickeln	enfold, envelop, entangle.
wundern	to wonder	verwundern	set a-wondering, astonish; *also* fall a-wondering, be astonished.

11.—Zer-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*dis-* or *di-*; *asunder*, *in pieces*, *to pieces.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
brechen	to break	zerbrechen	break in pieces, break in two, etc.
Glied	member, limb	zergliedern	dismember, dissect.
legen	to lay	zerlegen	(lay in pieces), take to pieces.
reißen	to rend	zerreißen	rend in pieces.
rinnen	to run, flow	zerrinnen	flow asunder, melt, break (as a wave).
schellen	to dash, crash	zerschellen	dash (*or* be dashed) to pieces.
splittern	to split *or* splinter	zersplittern	split asunder.
springen	to spring, burst	zerspringen	burst asunder, crack.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
stieben	fly about like dust (Staub)	zerstieben	fly asunder, disperse.
stören	to stir, rummage	zerstören	disturb, destroy.
streuen	to strew	zerstreuen	scatter.
theilen	[deal] to part, share	zertheilen	part in sunder, divide, disperse.
trennen	part, sever	zertrennen	dissever, disjoin.

SEPARABLE VERB-PREFIXES.

See "Verb-Prefixes (*b*), (*c*), and *N.B.* 1.," page 37.

12.—Ab-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*off* [see L. of Ch.14, 15]; *de-*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
gehen	to go	abgehen	go off.
hangen	to hang (*intrans.*)	abhangen	depend [Lat. *pende-* hang].
nehmen	to take	abnehmen	fall away, decrease, decline.
reisen	to travel	abreisen	set off, set out on a journey, depart.
pflücken	to pluck	abpflücken	pluck off.
schrecken	to scare, terrify	abschrecken	scare away, deter [Lat. *de-* off, & *terre-* scare].

13.—An-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*on*, *at*, *to*, *up against*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
blicken	to look, glance	anblicken	look *or* glance at.
fahren	[fare] to travel, drive	anfahren	drive, dart, fly *or* snap at.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
faſſen [fasten] to grasp		anfaſſen	fasten upon, clutch hold of.
klopfen	to knock	anklopfen	knock (at a door).
nehmen	to take	annehmen	take to oneself, accept, adopt.
ſchauen [show] to look		anſchauen	look upon, view, contemplate.
ſehen	to see, look	anſehen	look at; *whence*: Angeſicht (the part of a person which is looked at) countenance.
ſetzen	to set, put	anſetzen	set on, put (to one's lips, etc.).
ſtoßen	to push, knock	anſtoßen	knock against (as one glass against another), to hob-and-nob.

14.—Auf-.

a.—Up, Upon [see L. of Ch. 12].

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
gehen	to go	aufgehen	go up, rise.
heben	to heave, lift	aufheben	upheave, lift up, pick up.
klar	clear	aufklären	clear up, explain.
richten	[*righten*, from recht right]	aufrichten	set upright, erect, raise.
ſehen	to see, look	aufſehen	oversee; *also*, look up.
ſeyn	to be	aufſeyn	be up, be risen, be out of bed.
ſtehen	to stand	aufſtehen	stand up, get up, rise.

b.—Opening, Unloosing.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*open*, *un-*, *dis-*, *up*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
brechen	to break	aufbrechen	break open; (*also*, break up, decamp).
lösen	to loosen	auflösen	unloose, dissolve, solve.
schließen	to close	aufschließen	unclose, unlock.
seyn	to be	aufseyn	be open.
thun	to do	aufthun	[*dup*=do up] undo, open.

15.—Aus-.

a.—Out [see L. of Ch. 4, *b*].

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*out-*, *ex-*, *de-*, *dis-*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
rufen	to cry	ausrufen	cry out, exclaim [Lat. *clama-*].
speien	to spue, spit	ausspeien	spit out.
theilen	to deal, divide	austheilen	deal out, distribute.
wandern	to wander	auswandern	wander out.
weichen	to give ground	ausweichen	to move out of the way.

b.—Out and out, thoroughly.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*up*.

füllen	to fill	ausfüllen	fill up.
liefern	to deliver	ausliefern	deliver up.
trinken	to drink	austrinken	drink up.

16.—Bei-.

{ By the side of; *hence also,*
{ To the side of, to the help of.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*by, ad-*; *up to, sub-*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
bringen	to bring	beibringen	bring up, bring forward, adduce [Lat. *ad* to, & *duc-* lead], suggest [Lat. *sub* up to, & *ger-* carry].
kommen	to come	beikommen	come near, come up to, equal.
springen	to spring, leap, run	beispringen	run to the help of, succour [Lat. *sub* up to, & *curr-* run].
stehen	to stand	beistehen	stand by (any one), assist [Lat. *ad* to *or* by, & *sist-* stop *or* stand].

17.—Dar-.

Dar [*there*; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*] gives the notion of *presenting* an object to the eye, setting it *there* before you.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*forth, out, pre-, pro-*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
bieten	to bid	darbieten	hold out, make an offer of, proffer.
führen	to lead	darführen	lead forth.
reichen	to reach out	darreichen	hand *or* offer.
stellen [instal]	to set	darstellen	set before any one, to present.

18.—Durch- (Separable).

See "2.—Durch (Inseparable)," page 40.

Durch [through], when Separable, generally means *right through*, *right away*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
gehen	to go	durchgehen walk off, go right away, run away.

19.—Ein-.

The Prefix ein= is only another form of the Preposition in=*in* or *into*. It is opposed to aus=: as, einschiffen [in-ship] to *em-bark*, to ship; ausschiffen [out-ship] to *de-bark*, to land.

a.—In.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*in*, *en-* (or *em-*).

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
drücken	to press	eindrücken press in, impress.
fassen	to grasp, clasp	einfassen enclose, enchase *or* set (in a frame, border, etc.).
gehen	to go	eingehen go in, enter.
nehmen	to take	einnehmen take in, receive.
schenken [skink]	to pour	einschenken (pour in, from a bottle *or* tap), pour out (wine, etc.) for any one.
schiffen [take ship]	to sail	einschiffen (put on board ship), to ship, em-bark.
schlafen	to sleep	einschlafen (get into sleep), fall asleep.
stürmen	to storm	einstürmen (storm into), pitch into.

b.—Into sleep, asleep.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
singen	to sing	einsingen	sing to sleep.
tanzen	to dance	eintanzen	dance to sleep.
wiegen	to rock	einwiegen	rock to sleep.

20.—Empor-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*up, aloft, on high.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
ziehen [tow, tug] to draw	emporziehen draw up, hoist aloft.

21.—Entgegen-.

Derived from ent- and gegen against [see L. of Ch. 10, *b*]; hence it means *opposite, facing* you.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
kommen	to come	entgegenkommen	come opposite, meet.
setzen	to set, put	entgegensetzen	set against, oppose; *whence the participle* entgegengesetzt opposed, opposite [Lat. *ob* against, and *pos-* put].

22.—Fort-.

Connected with *forth, further*, etc. [see L. of Ch. 1, *a*].

a.—Departure.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*Away, off.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
eilen	to hasten	forteilen	hasten, hasten away, hurry off.
ziehen	to draw	fortziehen	move away, set out (on a journey).

b.—Continuance.

Engl. Equiv.:—*Further, onward, on.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
eilen	to hasten	forteilen	hasten onwards.
fahren	travel	fortfahren	go on, continue.
setzen	set	fortsetzen	go on, continue.
wandeln [wander] walk		fortwandeln	walk on.

23.—Heim-.

Engl. Equiv.:—*Home, homewards,* [see L. of Ch. 18, *b*].

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
eilen	to hasten	heimeilen	hasten home.
schiffen	[to take *ship*] to sail	heimschiffen	sail homeward.
suchen	to seek	heimsuchen	search narrowly, explore, visit.

24.—Her-.

Her means *hither,* and implies *motion towards* the speaker or spectator; as hin *hence,* implies *motion from.* These two words may often be translated by *come* and *go*: thus, kriechen to creep, herkriechen to come creeping, hinkriechen, go creeping (away).

Engl. Equiv.:—*Hither, this way, on, to me,* etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
rufen	to call	herrufen	call to oneself, call to one's side.
wehen	to wave	herwehen	come waving (towards one).

25.—Herum-.

Compound of her hither, and um about.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*round, around, about.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
lagern	[layer, lair] to couch	(sich) herumlagern lay or couch (themselves) around.

26.—Hervor-.

Compound of her hither, and vor before, forwards; hence it means *forward towards* the speaker or spectator, *out. hither.*

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*forth, forward, out.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
nehmen	to take	hervornehmen take out, bring out.
rennen	to run	hervorrennen come running out.
springen	to spring	hervorspringen spring forth.
stürzen	to dash, rush	hervorstürzen come rushing out.
treten	to tread, step	hervortreten step forth.

27.—Hin-.

Hin (=*hence*) expresses *motion from* the speaker or spectator; and often includes *motion towards* or *up to* some other object.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*away, along, up,* etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
fallen	to fall	hinfallen fall along (on one's knees, face, etc.).
kriechen	to creep	hinkriechen creep along, creep up to.
schauen	[show] to look	hinschauen cast one's eyes, take a survey.
treiben	to drive	hintreiben drive along, drive up.
treten	to tread, step	hintreten step along, step up.
werfen	to throw	hinwerfen cast away, throw (from you).

FIXES.

IM.
um about
nd, *about*
ived the C
rumlayers
(themse

r.
or before
e speake

out.
the Comp
n take
out
come
n spring
come rs
step for

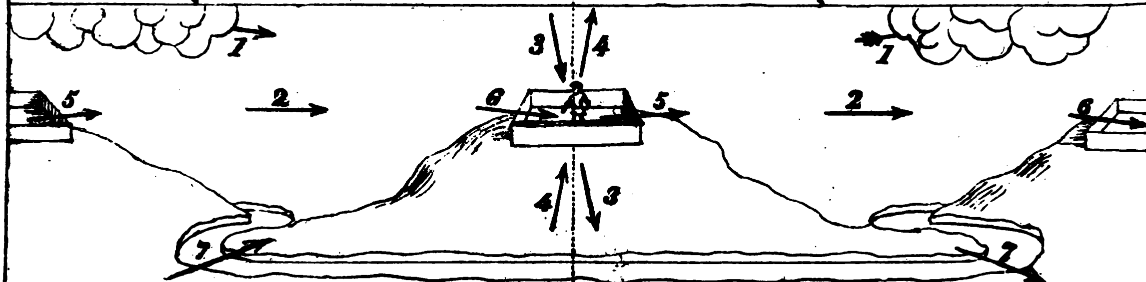
the spe
wards

mpou
long
s, face
along

's eye
ey.
ng, dr
g, ste
ly,
ou).

Compounds of Her and Hin.

— Her *Hither.* — | — Hin *Hence.* —



1. woher? *(from) where hither? Whence?*	1. wohin? *where hence? Whither*
2. daher *(from) there hither, Thence.*	2. dahin *there hence, Thither.*
3. herab, hernieder, herunter *Down hither.*	3. hinab, hinunter *Down hence.*
4. herauf *Up hither.*	4. hinauf *Up hence.*
5. heraus *Out hither.*	5. hinaus *Out hence.*
6. herein *In hither.*	6. hinein *In hence.*
7. herüber *Over hither.*	7. hinüber *Over hence.*

28.—*Compounds of* Her *and* Hin.

With Verbs of Motion, such as "go, come, send, fall, etc.," where the English would simply use "up, down, in, out, over," the Germans generally join to such words either her hither (expressing motion *towards*), or hin hence (expressing motion *from*); thus defining more closely the direction of the action with regard to the speaker or spectator. Thus, of rain dropping down from the clouds, they say her=ab *hither-down*, because it descends *to* us; but of a stone dropping down into a well, they say hin=ab *hence-down*, because it descends *from* us. If you hear a knock at your door, you say "her=ein! *hither-in!*" that is, Come in: but if you bid a dog enter his kennel, you say "hin=ein! *hence-in!*" that is, Go in.

The following Compounds of her and hin are explained by the DIAGRAM opposite.

Of her: daher, herab, herauf, heraus, herein, hernieder, herüber, herunter.

Of hin: dahin, hinab, hinauf, hinaus, hinein, hinüber, hinunter.

A few of the Examples occurring in the book are here given.—The four words da, ab, ein, unter are shown on the left hand compounded with her, and on the right compounded with hin.

Compounds of Her.		Compounds of Hin.	
daher-kommen	come on, come along, this way.	dahin-ziehen	travel thither, that way, or away.
herab-gießen	gush down, pour down (*upon* us, like rain).	hinab-reißen	tear down or away (*from* us, as a flood does a bridge).

Compounds of Her.	Compounds of Hin.
herein-lassen let in, cause to come in	hinein-fallen fall in.
	hinein-führen lead in, introduce.
	hinein-treten [tread] walk in, step in.
	hinein-werfen throw in.
herunter-neigen stoop down (*towards* the speaker or spectator)	hinunter-neigen stoop down (*away from* the speaker or spectator).

29.—Hoch-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*high*, *highly* [See L. of Ch. 9, *b*].

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
beglücken	to bless, favour	hochbeglücken	favour highly.
schätzen	to treasure, prize, to estimate	hochschätzen	prize highly.

30.—Los-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*loose, away*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
reißen	to tear	losreißen	tear loose, tear away.

31.—Mit-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*with* (one), *together*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
bringen	to bring	mitbringen	bring with (one).
laufen	to run	mitlaufen	run together with (one).
nehmen	to take	mitnehmen	take with (one).

32.—Nach-.

Connected with nah nigh [see L. of Ch. 10, *a*]; whence nächst nighest *or* next.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*after*, *sub-*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
		nachahmen	take after, imitate.
folgen	to follow	nachfolgen	follow next, succeed.
gehen	to go	nachgehen	go after, follow.

33.—Nieder.

Connected with *nether*, *be-neath*, *under-neath*. [See L. of Ch. 1, *a*.]

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*down*, *downwards*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
bücken	to bow, bend	niederbücken	bend downwards.
gehen	to go	niedergehen	go down, set.
lassen	to let	(sich) niederlassen	let (oneself) down, condescend.
legen	to lay	niederlegen	lay down.
neigen	to incline, stoop	niederneigen	stoop downwards.
strecken	to stretch	niederstrecken	stretch down, lay flat, to floor.

34.—Ueber-.

See "Ueber Inseparable," page 47.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*over*, *across*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
legen	to lay	überlegen	lay (something) over; turn over.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
treiben	to drive	übertreiben	drive (something) over or across.
treten	to tread	übertreten	step over or across, go over to another party.

35.—Um-.

See "Um Inseparable," page 47.

a.—Revolution.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*round*, *about*, *over*, (topsy-turvy), etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
gehen	to go	umgehen	go round, revolve.
sehen	to see	sich umsehen	look round, look about.
werfen [warp]	to throw	umwerfen	overthrow, overturn.

b.—Transition, Transposition.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *trans-*.

pflanzen	to plant	umpflanzen	transplant.
schiffen	to ship	umschiffen	trans-ship.

36.—Unter-.

See "Unter Inseparable," page 47.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*down*, *under* [See L. of Ch. 2].

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
gehen	to go	untergehen	go down, sink, set; perish.
halten	to hold	unterhalten	hold under.

37.—Vor-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*fore-*, *before*, *to*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
fallen	to fall	vorfallen	fall before (any one), fall out, happen.
haben	to have	vorhaben	have *before you*; hence to *be after*, aim at.
kommen	to come	vorkommen	come before, appear, happen.
lesen	to read	vorlesen	read (before a person), read to.
sagen	to say	vorsagen	say (before a person), say to.
sehen	to see	vorsehen	foresee, provide, take care.
stellen [in-stal]	to set	vorstellen	set before (any one), to present, introduce, represent.

38.—Weg-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*away* [See L. of Ch. 10, *b*].

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
gehen	to go	weggehen	go away.
laufen	to run	weglaufen	run away.

39.—Wider-.

Connected with the English *with* in withstand, withhold, etc. [See L. of Ch. 1, *a*.]

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*against*, *with-*, *ob-*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb	
stehen	to stand	widerstehen	stand against, with-stand, oppose, resist.

40.—Wieder-.

Wieder *again* is connected with wider *against.*

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*again*, *back*, *re-*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
hallen	to sound	wiederhallen sound again, resound, echo.
kehren	to turn	wiederkehren turn back, return; Wiederkehr a return.

41.—Zu-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*to, at, on.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
hören	to hear	zuhören (hear to), listen.
rufen	to cry, call	zurufen call to (any one).
schauen	to look	zuschauen look at, look on; *hence* Zuschauer looker-on, spectator.
tragen	to carry	zutragen bring to, bring to pass. sich zutragen bring itself about, come about, come to pass.

42.—Zurück-.

From zu to, and Rücken [ridge, See L. of Ch. 8], the back; hence zurück to the back, backwards.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*back, re-*.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
bring	to bring	zurückbringen to bring back.
treten	to tread	zurücktreten to step back, retire.
werfen	to throw	zurückwerfen to throw back.

Noun-Prefixes.

A Noun-Prefix is a syllable which, if placed *before* a word, makes a derivative Noun.

Examples of English Nouns formed by Prefixes:—"income, inlet, outcome, outlet, misdeed, misrule, unbelief, untruth, uproar, upstart," etc. *In-*, *out-*, *mis-*, *un-*, *up-*, are here Noun-Prefixes.

43.—Ge-.

This Prefix is either Collective or Concretive.

a.—Collective.

Ge-, prefixed to a *Noun*, forms a new Noun, signifying a *Number* or *Collection* of things: as, Berg a mountain, Gebirge mountain-range, or a whole system of mountains.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
Bein	bone; *and*	Gebein, Gerippe,	skeleton.
Rippe	rib		
Berg	mountain	Gebirge	mountain, range.
Feder	feather; *and*	Gefieder, Geflügel,	feathered or winged tribe, birds.
Flügel	wing		
Feld	field	Gefilde	collection of fields, plain, open country.
Schwester	sister	Geschwister	brothers and sisters.
Stern	star	Gestirn	constellation.
Vogel [fowl]	bird	Gevögel	birds (taken as a whole).

b.—Concretive.

Ge-, prefixed to the root of a *Verb*, forms a Noun signifying the *Doing* of something (Abstract), or the *Thing which is done* (Concrete). From singen to sing,

we have Gesang the Art of singing, *Song* (Abstract); and also Gesang the Thing which is sung, *a Song* (Concrete). The *majority* of nouns thus formed have a Concretive meaning.

In many cases -de or -t is added to the root of the Verb, as in Ge-bäu-de, Ge-mäl-de, Ge-schäf-t, Ge-stal-t, etc.

Compare the English *weigh-t, sigh-t, grow-th, see-d,* etc.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
bauen	to build	Gebäude	a building.
bären (Old Germ.)	to bear	Geberde	(bearing), gesture.
brüllen [*brool*]	to roar	Gebrüll	roaring, a roar.
denken	to think	Gedanke	thought; a thought.
fahren [fare]	to travel	Gefahr	danger.
fühlen	to feel	Gefühl	feeling, emotion; a feeling, a sentiment.
hören	to hear	Gehör	a hearing; (the sense of) hearing.
leiten	to lead	Geleit	escort.
machen	to make, join	Gemach	chamber.
		Gemahl	consort.
malen	to paint	Gemälde	a painting.
Muth [mood]	heart, courage	Gemüth	mind, heart.
nießen	to nourish	Genoß	partner, companion.
rollen	to roll	Geroll	a rolling noise, rumbling.
singen	to sing	Gesang	singing or song; a song.
schaffen [shape]	to create, make, do	Geschöpf	creature.
		Geschäft	a business.
schenken	to present	Geschenk	a present.
schmecken [smack]	to taste	Geschmack	taste, relish; (the sense of) taste.
schreien	to cry	Geschrei	crying; a cry.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
schwätzen	to chat	Geschwätz	a babbling, babble, chatter.
setzen	to set	Gesetz	(a thing set up) law, statute [Lat. *statutum* set up].
sehen	to see	Gesicht	sight, eyesight; a vision; visage, face.
stehen	to stand	Gestade	(standing or landing place) bank.
stellen	to place, to set	Gestalt	form, shape; a figure.
tragen	to carry	Getraide *	grain, corn.
trinken	to drink	Getränk	a drink, beverage.
wachsen	to wax, grow	Gewächs	a plant.
walten [wield]	to rule, to sway	Gewalt	power, force, violence.
winden	to wind	Gewand	garment.
wägen	to weigh	Gewicht	weight.
wissen [wit]	to know	Gewissen	conscience [from Lat. *con* together, & *sci-* know].
wölben	to vault	Gewölbe	vault, arch.

44.—Miß-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*Mis-*, *dis-*, *de-*, *un-*.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
Form	form	Mißform	deformity.
Geberde	gesture	Mißgeberde	grimace.
Geburt	birth	Mißgeburt	misbirth, monster.
Jahr	year	Mißjahr	bad, unproductive year.
Klang	sound	Mißklang	dissonance, discord.
Muth [mood]	mind	Mißmuth	displeasure, discontent.

* In old German *Getragidi*, that which is *carried*; the fruit which wandering nations had to *carry* with them, as they were sure not to find it wild. Hence fruits that are found in a wild state, as rice, potatoes etc., are *not* included under Getraide.

(Grimm, quoted by Humboldt in his "*Ansichten der Natur.*")

Mißlich [miss-like] *a-miss*, from the Verb missen *to miss.*—So that the Prefix miß was originally *a word of itself;* the same, no doubt, is true of all Prefixes and Affixes.

45.—Un=.

Un= is Negative, like the English *un-*; but it often expresses something monstrous, unnatural, or hateful.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*Un-*, *in-*, *mis-*, *dis-*.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
Bestand	constancy	Unbestand	inconstancy.
Gestalt	shape	Ungestalt	misshapen thing.
Glück	luck, fortune	Unglück	misfortune.
Heil	health, safety	Unheil	harm, damage.
Kraut	herb	Unkraut	weed.
Mensch	man	Unmensch	inhuman wretch, a monster of a man.
Muth	mood, temper	Unmuth	ill-temper, ill-humour.
Stern	star	Unstern	evil star, dis-aster [from the Lat. *astrum* a star].
Thier [deer]	animal, beast	Unthier	(not even a beast), a monster.
Wille	will, pleasure	Unwille	displeasure, indignation.

Adjective-Prefixes.

An Adjective-Prefix is a syllable which, when placed *before* a word, makes a derivative Adjective.

Examples of English Adjectives formed by Prefixes:—"He spoke in an *offhand* manner; He did it in an *underhand* way." Here *off* and *under* are Adjective-Prefixes, changing the Noun *hand* into an Adjective. In the words "*unwise, inconstant*," *un-* and *in-* are Adjective-Prefixes, changing the Adjectives *wise* and *constant* into new Adjectives with a contrary meaning.

46.—Be-.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Hand	hand	behend	handy, deft, nimble.
		bequem	comfortable, snug.
		bereit	ready.
wissen	to wit, know	bewußt	conscious.

47.—Ge-.

Strengthening.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
heim	home	geheim	secret.
nah	nigh, near	{ genau	close, strict, exact.
		{ genug	enough.
recht	right	gerecht	righteous, just.
schwinden	to vanish	geschwind	swift, sudden.
treu	true	getreu	faithful.
wahr	true, sure	gewahr	aware.
wissen	to know	gewiß	certain, sure.

48.—Un-.

Negative, like the English *un-*, *in-*. Connected with ohne *without*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
bekannt	known	unbekannt	unknown.
bewußt	conscious	unbewußt	unconscious.
endlich	having an end, finite	unendlich	infinite.
geheuer	natural, safe	ungeheuer	unnatural, monstrous, enormous; *whence the Noun* Ungeheuer a monster.
gemischt	mixed, mingled	ungemischt	unmingled.
gern	gladly, willingly (Adverb)	ungern	unwillingly, not gladly.
Gestalt	shape	ungestalt	unshapely, misshapen.
getreu	faithful	ungetreu	unfaithful, faithless.
recht	right	unrecht	wrong.
treu	true, faithful	untreu	unfaithful.
vergänglich	perishable	unvergänglich	imperishable.

LIST OF AFFIXES.

An Affix is a syllable put *after* a word, to form a new word with some difference of meaning.

Thus in the words *manly*, *manful*, *mannish*, *mannikin*, *manhood*, the syllables *-ly*, *-ful*, *-ish*, *-kin*, *-hood* are all Affixes added to the word *man*. Again from *manly* and *manful* we can form the new words *manliness*, *manfulness* by adding the syllable *-ness*, which is another Affix; and *manfully* by adding the Affix *-ly*.

Noun-Affixes.

A Noun-Affix is a syllable which, if *added* to a word, makes a derivative Noun.

Examples of English Nouns formed by Affixes:—

Adding the Affix	To the Root	We form the Noun
er & ster	brew, song	brewer, songster, spinster.
y & ry	brewer, herald	brewery, heraldry.
dom, ship, hood	king	kingdom, kingship, kinghood.
head	God	Godhead.
ity, ation	civil, civilize	civility, civilization.
t, th	weigh, grow	weight, growth.
ness	slow, sad	slowness, sadness.
Diminutives. kin	lamb	lambkin.
ling	dear, goose	darling, gosling.
let	ring, brace	ringlet, bracelet.
et	flower, pouch	floweret, pocket.
el	sack	satchel.
le	bind, shoot, lade	bundle, shuttle, ladle.
ess, ine	giant, hero	giantess, heroine.

1.—-chen, -lein, -ling.

These are all Diminutive; -chen corresponds to the English *-kin* [see L. of Ch. 9, *a*]; -lein and -ling to *-ling*. But -chen and -lein generally express Fondness, so that children even call their parents Papachen, Mamachen [papa-kin, mama-kin]; while -ling oftener implies Contempt, as Hof court, Höfling courtling, courtier; Witzling witling, a would-be wit.

Engl. Equiv.:— *-kin*, *-ling*, *-let*, *-et*, *-el*.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
Blume [bloom] flower		Blümchen, Blümlein, little flower, floweret.	
finden	to find	Fündling	foundling.
Frau	lady, Mrs.	Fräulein	young lady, Miss.
früh	early	Frühling	(early season), spring
Gunst	favour	Günstling	favorite.
jung	young	Jüngling	[youngling] youngster, youth.
lehren	to teach	Lehrling	pupil, apprentice.
lieb	dear	Liebchen	[dearling] darling.
Maid, Magd	maid	Mädchen, Mägdelein,	girl, maiden.
saugen	to suck	Säugling	suckling, babe.
schmettern	to flutter	Schmetterling	[little flutterer] butterfly.
viola, Latin for violet		Veilchen	violet.
Viertelstunde	¼ of an hour	Viertelstündchen	a little quarter of an hour.
Weile	(a) while	Weilchen	(a) little while.
Welt	world	Weltling	worldling.
Wurm	worm	Würmchen	little worm.

2.—-e, -heit, -keit, -niß.

These Affixes, added to Adjectives, form Nouns signifying an abstract quality.

-Heit corresponds to *-head*, *-hood*, (as in Godhead, manhood); and -niß to *-ness*. -Keit is only another form of -heit, and is chiefly added to Adjectives ending in -ig, -lich, -bar, etc. From rein clean, comes Reinheit cleanness, purity; but from reinlich cleanly, comes Reinlichkeit cleanliness.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *-head, -hood, -ness, -t, -th, -ity,* etc.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
breit	broad, wide	Breite	breadth, width.
dankbar	thankful	Dankbarkeit	thankfulness.
finster	dark	Finsterniß	darkness.
gleich	like, equal	Gleichniß	likeness; Gleichheit equality.
Gott	God	Gottheit	Godhead.
göttlich	godlike, divine	Göttlichkeit	divineness.
gut	good	Güte	goodness, kindness.
gütig	kind	Gütigkeit	kindness.
herrlich	lordly	Herrlichkeit	lordliness, magnificence.
hohe	high	Höhe	height; Hoheit Highness.
hohl	hollow	Höhle	hollowness, cavity, cavern.
Kind	child	Kindheit	childhood.
klar	clear	Klarheit	clearness, splendour.
lang	long	Länge	length.
leer	empty	Leere	emptiness.
rein	pure, clean	Reinheit	purity, cleanness.
reinlich	cleanly	Reinlichkeit	cleanliness.
schön	beautiful	Schönheit	beauty.
treu	true, faithful	Treue	faithfulness.
wahr [Lat. *ver-us*]	true	Wahrheit	verity, truth.
weit	wide, far	Weite	width, distance.

3.—-ei, -schaft, -thum.

The Affix =ei corresponds to the English *-y*, as in Brauer=ei brewery; =schaft to *-ship*, as in Freund=schaft friendship; and =thum to *-dom*, as in Heiden=thum heathendom.

=ei often expresses something odious or contemptible, as from Pfaffe [*pápa*, pope] *priest*, comes Pfafferei *priestcraft*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *-y*, *-ship*, *-dom*, *-age*, *-hood*, etc.

a.—Abstractive.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
bekannt	known, acquainted	Bekanntſchaft	acquaintance (with a person).
Brauer	brewer	Brauerei	brewery, brewing.
Bruder	brother	Brüderſchaft	the relationship of brothers, brotherhood.
Bürge	surety	Bürgſchaft	suretyship.
Chriſt	a Christian	Chriſtenthum	Christianity.
Dieb	thief	Dieberei	thievery.
Erbe	heir	Erbſchaft	heirship, heirdom, heritage.
Feind	foe, enemy	Feindſchaft	enmity.
Fiſcher	fisher	Fiſcherei	fishery, fishing.
Freund	friend	Freundſchaft	friendship.
Geſell	companion, fellow	Geſellſchaft	company, fellowship.
Heide	heathen	Heidenthum	heathenism.
heilig	holy	Heiligthum	[halidom] sanctuary
Jude	Jew	Judenthum	Judaism.
Knecht	[knight] vassal, bondsman, thrall, slave	Knechtſchaft	vassalage, bondage, thraldom, slavery.
Nachbar	neighbour	Nachbarſchaft	neighbourhood.
reich	rich	Reichthum	riches.
Reiter	rider	Reiterei	horsemanship.
Ritter	knight	Ritterſchaft, Ritterthum	knighthood, chivalry.
ſchmeicheln	to flatter	Schmeichelei	flattery.
Sclave	slave	Sclaverei	slavery.
wiſſen	to wit, know	Wiſſenſchaft	science.

b.—Collective.

bekannt	known, acquainted	Bekanntſchaft	(one's) acquaintance *or* friends.
Bruder	brother	Brüderſchaft	(a) brotherhood, a company of brethren.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun
Gesell	companion	Gesellschaft a company, a society.
Heide	heathen	Heidenthum the whole body of heathens, heathendom.
Jude	Jew	Judenschaft the body of Jews, Jewry.
Priester	priest	Priesterschaft the priesthood *or* clergy.
Reiter	rider	Reiterei cavalry.
Ritter	knight	Ritterschaft a body of knights, a chivalry.
Sipp	sib, kinsman.	Sippschaft [Scot. *sept*] kindred, clan.

4.—-er, -ner, -ster.

These Affixes form Nouns of the Masculine Gender, indicating a man's *employment*.

(*a*). -er, added to the root of a Verb, marks *him who does* an action: as, wandern, to wander, Wanderer, he who wanders, wanderer.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *-er*, *-or*, *-ster*.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
beschützen	to protect	Beschützer	protector.
gebieten	to bid, command	Gebieter	commander, master.
häschen	to catch	Häscher	catcher, bailiff.
hängen	to hang	Hänger	hanger.
henken	to kill by hanging	Henker	hangman.
hüten	to heed, tend, watch	Hüter	keeper, steward.
jagen	to hunt	Jäger	huntsman, fusilier.
rauben	to rob	Räuber	robber.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
reiten	to ride	Reiter	rider, trooper; Ritter chevalier, knight.
schneiden	to cut	Schneider	tailor; Schnitter reaper.
singen	to sing	Singer	singer; Sänger songster, minstrel.
wandern	to wander	Wanderer	wanderer, traveller.
weben	to weave	Weber	weaver.
wüthen	to rage	Wüther	one who rages; *whence* Wütherich tyrant, cruel man.
zapfen	to tap	Zapfer	tapster.
zechen	to tope	Zecher	toper, boon companion.

(*b*). =er, =ner, =ster, added to Nouns, mark *him who attends to* or *is busied with* (something); as Schaf sheep, Schäfer shepherd; Rede speech, talk, Redner speech-maker, orator; Schuh shoe, Schuster cobbler: (=ster is rather *contemptuous*; shoemaker would be Schuh=macher. So also our *-ster* in youngster, tapster, huckster, etc.).

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
Glocke	[clock] bell	Glöckner	bellman, sexton.
Rede	speech, talk	Redner	orator.
Schaf	sheep	Schäfer	shepherd.
Schiff	ship	Schiffer	captain of a ship, skipper.
Schuh	shoe	Schuster	cobbler.

5.—=in.

By adding =in, we change a Masculine Noun into a Feminine: as Graf count, Gräfin countess; Schuster cobbler (a man), Schusterin cobbler (a woman).

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *-ess*, *-ine*.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
Freund	(male) friend	Freundin	(female) friend.
Held	hero	Heldin	heroine.
Jude	Jew	Jüdin	Jewess.
Koch	(man) cook	Köchin	(woman) cook.
König	king	Königin	queen.
Löwe	lion	Löwin	lioness.
Markgraf	margrave	Markgräfin	margravine.
Nachbar	(male) neighbour	Nachbarin	(female) neighbour.
Schäfer	shepherd	Schäferin	shepherdess.
Wolf	wolf	Wölfin	she-wolf.

6.—=ung.

This Affix corresponds to the English *-ing*.

When added to the root of a Verb, it marks the *Doing* of an action: thus, from fällen to fell, die Fällung eines Baumes the *felling* of a tree; from zeichnen to draw, die Zeichnung eines Planes the *drawing* of a plan. But also sometimes the *Thing done*: as, eine Zeichnung a *drawing*, a *picture*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *-ing*, *-tion* or *-sion*, *-ment*, *-ance* or *-ence*, *-al*, etc.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun	
anschauen	to look upon	Anschauung	intuition [Lat. *in*, upon; and *tue*-look].
beschreiben	to describe	Beschreibung	descrip*tion*.
entfernen	to remove	Entfernung	remov*al*.
erfüllen	to fill, to fulfil	Erfüllung	fulfil*ment*.
öffnen	to open	Oeffnung	open*ing*.
vorsehen	to foresee, to provide	Vorsehung	Provid*ence*[Lat.*pro* before, & *vide*- see].

Adjective-Affixes.

An Adjective-Affix is a syllable which, if *added* to any word, forms a derivative Adjective.

We cannot read such words as "active, passive, offensive, defensive, conservative, destructive," without feeling that the syllable *-ive* has changed the Latin verbs *act-*, *pass-*, etc., into Adjectives: *-ive* is therefore an Adjective-Affix.

Examples of English Adjectives formed by Affixes:—

1.	2.	3.
wood-en	troubl-ous	Rom-an
wood-ed	destruct-ive	Rom-an-ic
wood-y	indestruct-ible	angel-ic
cheer-ful	eat-able	diabol-ic-al
cheer-less	roy-al [from *roi*,	Angl-ic-an
woman-ly	king]	puer-ile
woman-ish	re-al [from *re*,	infant-ile
Scot-ch	thing]	asin-ine
trouble-some	singul-ar	fortun-ate

The added syllables *-en*, *-ed*, *-y*, *-ful*, etc., are all Adjective-Affixes. Those in column 1 are purely English; those in the other two columns are taken from the Latin.

7.—bar.

Connected with the old word bären to bear.

a.—Bearing, Producing.

Engl. Equiv.:— *-ful*, *-ous*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Dank	thanks	dankbar	thankful.
Frucht	fruit	fruchtbar	fruitful.
Furcht	fright	furchtbar	fearful, frightful.
Wunder	wonder	wunderbar	wonderful, wondrous.
sondern	to sunder, sever, separate	sonderbar	[sunder-ful] singular, odd, peculiar.

b.—What will *bear* the act of; as sichtbar what will bear looking at, visible.

Engl. Equiv.:— *-able*, *-ible*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
essen	to eat	eßbar	eatable.
sehen	to see	sichtbar	visible.
trinken	to drink	trinkbar	drinkable.

8.—-en, -ern.

This Affix shews the *Material* which anything is made of.

Engl. Equiv.:— *-en*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Blei	lead	eiern	leaden.
Eiche	oak	eichen	oaken.
Eisen	iron	eisern	(made of) iron.
Erde	earth	irden	earthen.
Gold	gold	golden	golden.
Haar	hair	hären	(made of) hair.
Holz	wood	hölzern	wooden.
Seide	silk	seiden	silken.
Wolle	wool	wollen	woollen.

(See "*N.B.*, Comparison of -en or -ern, -icht, -ig," page 84.)

9.—-haft.

Derived from haben to have; hence it means *having*, *full of:* as Herz heart, herzhaft having heart or courage, courageous. Sometimes it means *like*, *resembling*, *having the qualities of*.

Engl. Equiv.:— *-ful*, *-ous*, *-ly*, *-ish*, etc.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Fieber	fever	fieberhaft	feverish.
Herz	heart	herzhaft	stouthearted, courageous.
leben	to live	lebhaft	lively.
Mann	man	mannhaft	manful, manly.
Sünde	sin	sündhaft	sinful.
wahr [Lat. *ver-us*]	true	wahrhaft	veracious, truthful, true.

10.—-icht.

Resembling in shape, colour, texture, taste, etc.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Haar	hair	haaricht	resembling hair.
Holz	wood	holzicht	„ wood.
Kupfer	copper	kupfericht	„ copper.
Wolle	wool	wollicht	„ wool.

(See "*N.B.*, Comparison of -en or -ern, -icht, -ig," page 84.)

11.—-ig.

Corresponding to the Engl. *-y* [see L. of Ch. 10, *b*]: it means *possessing*, *abounding in*, *full of*.

In Compounds it may be translated by *-ed:* as lang long, Haar hair, and langhaarig long-haired.

Engl. Equiv.:— *-y*, *-ful*, *-ous*, *-ed*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Bedacht	thought, deliberation	bedächtig	deliberate, cautious, thoughtful.
Blume	[bloom] flower	blumig	flowery.
Blut	blood	blutig	bloody.
Durst	thirst	durstig	thirsty.
ein one, Falte fold		einfältig	simple [Lat. *sim-plic-* single-fold], silly.
Freude	joy	freudig	joyful, joyous.
Geschwätz	babble	geschwätzig	full of babble, babbling.
Gewalt	power, force, violence	gewaltig	forcible, powerful.
Gnade	grace	gnädig	gracious.
Grimm	wrath, fury	grimmig	wrathful, furious.
Haar	hair	haarig	hairy; langhaarig longhaired.
haben / heben	to have / to heave	heftig	violent, vehement.
Heil	[heal] health, wholeness	heilig	holy.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Herz	heart	herzig	having a heart (*as* barmherzig softhearted, etc.); *also* darling, sweet.
hohl hollow, Auge eye		hohläugig	hollow-eyed, sunken-eyed.
Jahr	year	jährig	one year old.
Kunde	[ken] knowledge, skill	kundig	having a knowledge, acquainted; waffenkundig weapon-skilled, skilful in arms.
Kupfer	copper	kupferig	abounding in copper.
Leben	life	lebendig	(having life), alive.
Lust	[lust] pleasure	lustig	merry [Old English *lusty*:— "The month of lusty May, when every lusty heart, etc." —*Prince Arthur*.]
Macht	might	mächtig	mighty.
Muth	[mood] heart, courage	muthig	courageous, brave.
Rose	rose	rosig	rosy.
Ruhe	peace, rest	ruhig	peaceful, quiet.
Sand	sand	sandig	sandy.
Schmutz	[smut] dirt	schmutzig	smutty, dirty.
Schnee	snow	schneeig	snowy.
Schuld	[should] debt, guilt	schuldig	indebted, guilty.
Stätte	stead, place	stätig	steady.
That	deed, act	thätig	deedful, active.
Trauer	[drear] grief, mourning	traurig	[dreary] mournful, sad.
Unterthan	[under-thane] a subject	unterthänig	subjected, subject.
Wille	will	willig	having a will, willing.
Würde	worth	würdig	worthy.
Zorn	anger	zornig	angry.

N.B.—Comparison of -en *(or* -ern*),* -icht*,* -ig.

1. A copper kettle is	kupfer-n	made of copper.
2. A thundery sky is	kupfer-icht*	resembling „
3. A mountain may be	kupfer-ig	abounding in „
1. A deal table is	hölz-ern	made of wood.
2. A hard cabbage is	holz-icht	resembling „
3. A district may be	holz-ig	abounding in „
1. The Baptist's garment was	här-en	made of hair.
2. A fine wire is	haar-icht	resembling „
3. Esau's hands were	haar-ig	abounding in „

12.—isch.

Belonging to a region, race or class. Sometimes used in contempt, like our childish, womanish, outlandish.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *-ish* or *-ch*, *-ic*, *-an*, *-ly*,

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Ausland	outland, foreign land	ausländisch [outlandish]	foreign.
Bube	boy, knave, rogue	bübisch	knavish, roguish.
Dieb	thief	diebisch	thievish.
Engel	angel	englisch	angelic.
Angeln	Angles	Englisch	English.
Teut	(ancient) Teuton	(Teutisch *or* deutisch) deutsch [Dutch]	Teutonic, German.
gigant-	Latin for giant	gigantisch	gigantic.

* So Coleridge, in the "Ancient Mariner":—

"All in a hot and *copper* sky,
The bloody sun at noon
Right up above the mast did stand,
No bigger than the moon."

A German would have said kupfericht.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Grieche	a Greek	griechisch	Greekish, Grecian, Greek.
Heide	a heathen	heidnisch	heathenish.
Herr	lord	herrisch	lordly, imperious.
Himmel	heaven	himmlisch	heavenly.
Hölle	hell	höllisch	hellish.
Erde	earth	irdisch	earthly.
Kind	child	kindisch	childish.
Mann	a man	(männisch) *whence the Noun* Mensch man, human being.	
Rom	Rome	römisch	Romish, Roman.
Russe	Russ	russisch	Russian.
Schotte	Scot	schottisch	Scottish, Scotch.
Türke	Turk	türkisch	Turkish.
Weib	wife, woman	weibisch	womanish.

(See "*N.B.*—Comparison of -isch and -lich," page 87.)

13.—-lich.

Corresponding to the English *like* and *-ly*. (See L. of Ch. 9, *a*.)

a.—Likeness.

Added to Nouns it means *like:* as, Freund friend, freundlich friendlike, friendly. But when added to Adjectives, it has the same force as our *-ish*, meaning *somewhat:* as, grau gray, gräulich grayish, *somewhat* gray.

ENGL. EQUIV.: — *-ly*, *-like*, *-ish*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
alt	old	ältlich	elderly, oldish.
braun	brown	bräunlich	brownish.
Ende	end	endlich	final, finite; unendlich endless, infinite.
Freund	friend	freundlich	friendly.
froh	glad	fröhlich	[frolic] gladsome.
gelb	yellow	gelblich	yellowish.
grau	gray	gräulich	grayish, grizzled.
Herr	lord	herrlich	lordly, glorious.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Kind	child	kindlich	childlike.
König	king	königlich	kingly, royal.
Mann	a man (*vir*)	männlich	manly, masculine.
Mensch	man (*homo*)	menschlich	human, humane.
Nacht	night	nächtlich	nightly.
reich	rich	reichlich	[rich-like] copious.
sauer	sour	säuerlich	sourish.
so	so	(so-lich), solch	[so-like] such.
süß	sweet	süßlich	sweetish.
Tag	day	täglich	daily.
Weib	wife, woman	weiblich	[wife-like] womanly, feminine.
wo	where	(wo-lich), welch	[what-like, Scot. *whilk*] which.
Welt	world	weltlich	worldly.

b.—Ability or Possibility.

Added to Verbs, -lich means that which *can do* something, or *can have* something *done to it*: as, sterben [starve] to die, sterblich that can die, mortal; glauben to believe, glaublich that can be believed, credible.

ENGL. EQUIV.: — *-able*, *-ible*, *-ile*.

glauben	to believe, credit	glaublich	believable, credible.
grauen, grausen	to cause horror	gräulich, grauslich	horrible, grizzly.
hassen	to hate	häßlich	[hate-able] hateful, ugly.
lieben	to love	lieblich	lovable, lovely.
sterben	[starve] to die	sterblich	mortal; unsterblich immortal.
beschreiben	to describe	un-beschreiblich	in-describable.
vergangen	perished	vergänglich	perishable.
wirken	to work, act	wirklich	actual, real.
zerbrechen	to break in pieces	zerbrechlich	fragile [from Latin *frag-*, break].

N.B.—Comparison of -isch *and* -lich.

Sometimes -isch, like our *-ish*, implies something Odious or Contemptible.

(Compare:—"papal & popish, Roman & Romish, childlike & childish," etc.)

From	Are derived with a good meaning:	with a bad meaning:
Herr lord	herrlich lordly, glorious	herrisch imperious, domineering.
Kind child	kindlich childlike	kindisch childish.
Weib wife, woman	weiblich womanly, feminine	weibisch womanish, effeminate.

14.—-los.

The word los is itself an Adjective, meaning *loose*. It is also used as an Affix to form other Adjectives, when it means *loose* or *free from*, *without*; and so corresponds to our *-less*; as, rastlos restless, without rest.

It is often opposed to -bar, -ig and -voll (full); thus, fruchtbar fruitful, fruchtlos fruitless; Freude joy, freudvoll and freudig joyful, freudenlos joyless.

ENGL. EQUIV.: — *-less*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Acht	heed	achtlos	heedless, careless.
Freude	joy	freudenlos	joyless, cheerless.
Frucht	fruit	fruchtlos	fruitless, useless.
Furcht	fear	furchtlos	fearless, dauntless.
Gedanke	[*from* denk think] thought	gedankenlos	void of thought, thoughtless.
Rast	rest	rastlos	restless.
Schlaf	sleep	schlaflos	sleepless.
Trost	comfort, consolation	trostlos	comfortless, inconsolable.

15.—-ſam.

Connected with *same*, and corresponding to the Engl. Affix *-some*, in "cumbersome, troublesome," etc.

ENGL. EQUIV.: —*-some, -ful.*

a.—Like.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
ein	one	einſam	alone [*that is*, all-one] lonesome, lonely.
genug	enough	genügſam	[enough-some] contented.
ſelten	seldom, rare	ſeltſam	rare, strange, odd.
gerecht	right, just	gerechtſam	rightful, lawful.

b.—Liking, inclined to.

arbeiten	to labour	arbeitſam	laborious, industrious.
Friede	peace	friedſam	peaceable.
Furcht	fright, fear	furchtſam	[fearsome] fearful, timid.
gehorchen	to hearken, obey	gehorſam	obedient.
heilen	to heal, make whole	heilſam	wholesome.
Mühe	toil, trouble	mühſam	toilsome, troublesome; *also*, painstaking.
ſparen	to spare	ſparſam	sparing, economical.
wachen	to wake, watch	wachſam	wakeful, watchful.

16.—-voll.

Voll is an Adjective, meaning *full*. It also serves as an Adjective-Affix, like our *-ful* in *needful, rueful, delightful*, etc.

ENGL. EQUIV.: —*full of, -ful.*

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Freude	joy	freudevoll	joyful.
Früchte	fruits	früchtevoll	full of fruits.
Gedanke	thought	gedankenvoll	full of thoughts, pensive.
Kummer	[cumber] sorrow	kummervoll	sorrowful.

Verb-Affixes.

A Verb-Affix is a syllable or letter, which, if added to the root of any word, makes a derivative Verb.

The Verb-Affixes play an important part in the formation of English Verbs. For the English Affixes *-ate*, *-fy*, *-ize*, *-en*, see under "Verb-Prefixes, *N.B.*," pages 37, 38.

Specimen of English Verbs formed by Affixes.

By the Affix *-le*.

From the Nouns *hand*, etc.: to handle, sparkle, curdle, muddle, muffle, gamble, throttle, strangle.
From the Adj. *rough*: to ruffle.
From the Verbs *drag*, etc.: to draggle, settle, whistle (whizz), swaddle (swathe), trundle (turn), hobble (hop).

By the Affix *-er*.

From the Nouns *mouth*, *wave*: to mutter, waver.
From the Adverbs *long*, *out*: to linger, utter.
From the Verbs *beat*, *hang*, *slop*: to batter, hanker, slobber.

The German Verb-Affixes are few and not very important. We here select four of them: -el or -er, -ig, -ir, and -z.

17.—-el-, -er-.

Engl. Equiv.: *often*, *-le*, *-er*.

a.—Repetition or Imitation on a small scale (chiefly -el). Often used in Contempt.

From		Comes the Derivative Verb	
alt	old	älteln	be getting elderly or oldish.
bitten	to ask	betteln	beg; *whence* Bettler beggar.

From		Comes the Derivative Verb	
fachen	to blow (as with bellows)	fächeln	fan.
falten	to fold	fälteln	gather in small folds, pucker, rumple.
flott	floating, afloat	flattern	flutter.
		flüstern	whisper.
Frost	frost	mich fröstelt	I feel chilly.
klingen	to sound, ring	klingeln	tinkle, ring (as mall bell).
lachen	to laugh	lächeln	smile.
(Old Germ. riesen)		rieseln	drizzle, trickle, gurgle.
sausen	to whizz, roar	säuseln	whistle, rustle.
schlafen	to sleep	schläfern	be sleepy.
Root conn. with *smite*		schmettern	[smatter] rattle, quaver, trill; flutter.
schütten	to shed or shoot (as rubbish)	schütteln and erschüttern	[shudder] shake.
streichen	to sweep, graze, stroke	streicheln	stroke (caressingly).
tropfen, triefen	to drop, drip	tröpfeln	dribble, trickle.
Witz	wit	witzeln	affect (or make) wit.
ziehen	[tow, tug] to draw	zögern	(draw-l), linger, dawdle, delay, tarry.

b.—Making (chiefly -er).

neu	new	erneuern	make new, renew.
Folge	[that which *follows*] consequence, inference	folgern	make an inference.
Hand	hand	handeln	handle, treat, trade.
Rauch	[reek] smoke	räuchern	fumigate, perfume.
steigen	to mount, rise	steigern	make higher, raise.
Wurf	a throw, cast (of dice, etc.)	würfeln	make a throw or cast, play at dice.

18.—-ig-.

Making or *Doing* (added after the letters d or t, l or n).

ENGL. EQUIV.: *-fy*.

From		Comes the Derivative Verb	
schweigen	to keep silence	beschwichtigen	make silent, pacify.
Ende	end	endigen	make an end, finish.
Pein	pain, torment	peinigen	to torment.
rein	pure	reinigen	make pure, purify.
Sünde	sin	sündigen	to sin, commit sin.

19.—-ir-.

Making or *Doing* [borrowed from the French *-ir* in *venir*, etc., and added chiefly to Foreign words].

From		Comes the Derivative Verb	
Latin *divid-*		dividiren	to divide.
French *friser*		frisiren	to frizzle, curl, dress (hair).
French *gêner*		(sich) geniren	to be embarrassed.
halb	half	halbiren	to halve.
Latin *inveni-*, to find or invent		inventiren	to make a list of things found, make an *inventory*.
French *marcher*		marschiren	to march.
Latin *multiplic-*, manifold		multipliziren	to multiply.
Profit	profit	profitiren	to profit.
Latin *reg-*		regiren	to rule.
Schatte	shadow	schattiren	to shade (a picture).
Latin *stude-*		studiren	to study.

20.—-z-.

Making, Doing, Saying.

From		Comes the Derivative Verb	
ach!	ah, alas!	ächzen	to groan, moan.
blind	blind	blinzen	to blink, wink.
Du	thou	duzen	to "thee and thou" each other, speak familiarly.
Schluck	gulp	schluchzen	to sob.

PART III.

Der Erlkönig.
THE ERL-KING.

Wer reitet[a] so spät durch Nacht und Wind?
Who rides so late through night and wind?
Es ist der Vater mit seinem Kind[b];
It is the father with his child;
Er hat den Knaben[c] wohl in dem[d] Arm,
He has the boy [*well*] safe in the arm,
Er faßt ihn sicher, er hält ihn warm.
He grasps him [*secure*] safely, he holds him warm.

Mein Sohn, was[e] birgst du so bang dein
My son, why [*buriest*] hidest thou so anxiously thy
Gesicht[f]?
face?
Siehst, Vater, du den Erlkönig nicht?
Seest, father, thou the Erl-King not?

---

[a] reiten means: to ride on the back of an animal (see L. of Ch. 2); to ride in a carriage, is fahren.

[b] Kind: conn. with the English *kind*, *kindred*, *kinsman*, *akin*, etc.

[c] Knabe: conn. with *knave*; see L. of Ch. 14. But *knave*, which at first meant only a boy, has now come to have a bad meaning: so the German Bube (*boy*) has suffered a partial degradation, and often means a knave.

[d] in dem: *in the*, meaning "*in his*."

[e] was: really means *what* (see L. of Ch. 4, *b*); hence also *what-for*, *wherefore*, *why*.

[f] Gesicht: properly means *sight* (see L. of Pr. 43, *b*; and L. of Ch. 9, *b*); but the most expressive feature, the Eye, is used for the whole countenance. So *visage* comes from the Latin *videre*, to see.

Den Erlkönig mit Kron' und Schweif[g]?
The Erl-King with crown and tail?
Mein Sohn, es ist ein Nebelstreif.[h]
My son, it is a streak of fog.

„Du, liebes Kind, komm geh mit mir!
"Thou, dear child, come go with me!
„Gar schöne Spiele spiel' ich mit dir;
"So-very fine games play I with thee;
„Manch' bunte Blumen sind an dem Strand,
"Many variegated flowers [*blooms*] are on the strand,
„Meine Mutter hat manch gülden[i] Gewand[j]."
"My mother has many (a) golden garment."

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und hörst du nicht
My father, my father, and hearest thou not
Was Erlenkönig mir leise verspricht[k]?
What Erl-King to-me softly promises?
Sey ruhig,[l] bleibe ruhig, mein Kind,
Be quiet, keep quiet, my child,
In dürren Blättern[m] säuselt[n] der Wind.
In dry leaves rustles the wind.

„Willst, feiner Knabe, du mit mir gehn?
"Wilt, [*fine*] sweet boy, thou with me go?

---

[g] Schweif: see L. of Ch. 6, *d*; and 12.

[h] Nebelstreif: a compound Noun, from Nebel [*nebula*] fog, and Streif *a stripe, strip,* or *streak*; see L. of Ch. 12.

[i] gülden: is an old and poetic word; the common word is golden.

[j] Gewand: from winden *to wind* (see L. of Pr. 43, *b*); Gewand, therefore, means something *wound* round the body, like a Scoth plaid or Roman toga; hence also any garment.

[k] verspricht: from sprechen (see L. of Ch. 9, *a*) *to speak*; versprechen [*for-speak*], *to speak away* from yourself to another, to promise; see L. of Pr. 10, *a*.

[l] ruhig: see L. of Aff. 11.

[m] Blättern: from Blatt; see L. of Ch. 2.

[n] säuselt: from sausen to make a great noise; säuseln to make a little noise; see L. of Aff. 17, *a*.

„Meine Töchter sollen[o] dich warten[p] schön;
" My daughters shall thee tend beautifully;
„Meine Töchter führen[q] den nächtlichen[r] Reihn[s],
" My daughters lead the nightly dance,
„Und wiegen und tanzen und singen dich ein[t]."
" And rock and dance and sing thee to-sleep."

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und siehst du nicht dort
My father, my father, and seest thou not there
Erlkönig's Töchter am[u] düsteren Ort?
Erl-King's daughters on-the gloomy spot?
Mein Sohn, mein Sohn, ich seh' es genau,
My son, my son, I see it exactly,
Es[v] scheinen die alten Weiden[w] so grau.
There shine the old willows so gray.

„Ich liebe dich, mich reizt deine schöne Gestalt[x];
" I love thee, me charms thy beautiful form;
„Und bist du nicht willig[y], so brauch ich Gewalt[z]."
" And art thou not willing, then use I force."

---

[o] sollen: conn. with *shall* and *should*, which originally expressed *debt* or *duty* (what is owing or *due*); so we say "You *should* do so," meaning "You *ought* (that is, you *owe*) to do so."

[p] warten: [conn. with *ward*, *guard*, etc.] means, to *wait*, *wait upon*, tend, attend, or nurse. Compare the *ward* of a hospital.

[q] führen: conn. with fahren to drive; also with the English *fare*, *farewell*, *thoroughfare*, *ferry*, etc., and the Lat. *ferre*.

[r] nächtlichen: from nächtlich; see L. of Aff. 13, *a*. For Nacht, see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

[s] Reihn: conn. with Reihe *a row* (see L. of Ch. 18, *b*, and 10, *a*); hence Reihen or Reigen a circular row (of dancers), a dance.

[t] ein: read through the L. of Pr. 19, *b*.

[u] am: contr. from an dem *on the*.

[v] es: when the Nominative comes *after* the Verb, es (*it*) is often put at the beginning of the sentence, like the Engl. *there*: as, "There lived once a king," instead of "A king once lived."

[w] Weiden: from Weide; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*.

[x] Gestalt: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

[y] willig: see L. of Aff. 11.

[z] Gewalt: (see L. of Pref. 43, *b*), from walten [conn. with *wield*], to rule. In the Saxon Heptarchy, the chief king was called *Bretwalda* [*broad-wielder*] wide-ruler.

Mein Vater, mein Vater, jetzt faßt[aa] er mich an[aa]!
My father, my father, now grasps he me —!
Erlkönig hat mir ein Leids gethan!
Erl-King has to-me a harm done!

Dem Vater grauset's,[ab] er reitet geschwind[ac],
The father shudders, he rides swiftly,
Er hält in den[d] Armen das ächzende[ad] Kind,
He holds in the arms the groaning child,
Erreicht[ae] den Hof mit Müh und Noth[af];
Reaches the courtyard with toil and distress [*need*];
In seinen Armen das Kind war todt[af].
In his arms the child was dead.

GOETHE.

Der Pilgrim.[a]

THE PILGRIM.

Noch in meines Lebens[e] Lenze[b]
Yet in my life's spring
War ich, und ich wandert' aus[c];
Was I, and I wandered out;

[aa] faßt and an: make one word, from anfassen *to fasten-on* (a person); see L. of Pr. 13.

[ab] dem Vater grauset es: for es grauset dem Vater it horrifies the father.

[ac] geschwind: see L. of Pr. 47.

[ad] ächzende: ach! [conn. with the Engl. *ache*] means *ah! oh! alas!* —hence ächzen is to keep calling out "ach!", to groan or moan; see L. of Aff. 20.

[ae] erreicht: from erreichen, see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[af] Noth and todt: see L. of Ch. 2 and 16, *c*.

---

[a] Pilgrim: from the Lat. *peregrinus*, one who goes over land (*per agrum*), a traveller.

[b] Lenze: from *Lent*, which falls in spring-time, see L. of Ch. 4, *a*.

[c] wanderte aus: from auswandern; see L. of Pr. 15, *a*.

Und der Jugend frohe Tänze
And — youth's glad dances
Ließ ich in des Vaters[d] Haus.
Left I in the father's house.

All mein Erbtheil, meine Habe[e]
All my inheritance, my property [*having*]
Warf[f] ich fröhlich[g] glaubend hin[f],
Threw I gladly believing away,
Und am[h] leichten Pilgerstabe[i]
And on-the light pilgrim-staff
Zog[j] ich fort[j] mit Kindersinn.[k]
Travelled I forth with childlike-mind.

Denn mich trieb[l] ein mächtig[m] Hoffen[n]
For me drove a mighty hope
Und ein dunkles Glaubenswort[o];
And a dark word-of-faith;

---

[d] des Vaters, *the father's*, meaning "*my father's.*"—For Vater, see L. of Ch. 1, *b*.

[e] Leben und Habe: see L. of Ch. 14.

[f] warf and hin: from hinwerfen; see L. of Pr. 27. For werfen, see L. of Ch. 17 and 12.

[g] fröhlich: conn. with *frolic*; from froh, glad, see L. of Aff. 13, *a*.

[h] am: contr. from an dem, *on the*, meaning "*on my.*"

[i] Pilgerstab: a compound noun, from Pilger, *pilgrim*, and Stab; see L. of Ch. 14.

[j] zog and fort: from fortziehen; see L. of Pr. 22, *a*.

[k] Kindersinn: a compound noun, from Kind, *child* (see Note [b] to „Der Erlkönig"), and Sinn, *sense* or mind.

[l] trieb (see L. of Ch. 18, *c*): from treiben; see L. of Ch. 2 and 14.

[m] mächtig: see L. of Aff. 11; derived from mögen, *may*; see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

[n] ein Hoffen: *a hoping*; the Infinitive of the Verb hoffen (see L. of Ch. 12), is here used instead of the regular Noun eine Hoffnung, *a hope*. When the Germans want to use the Verb as a Noun, they take the Infinitive, as das Singen, das Tanzen, *the to-sing*, *the to-dance*, instead of "*the singing, the dancing.*"

[o] Glaubenswort: a compound of Glauben, *belief* [from ge-lauben, conn. with *be-lieve*], and Wort, *word* (see L. of Ch. 2); hence, Glaubenswort, *belief's word.*

Wandle,[p] rief's,[y] — der Weg[q] ist offen[r] —
Wander, cried it, — the way is open —
Immer[z] nach dem Aufgang[s] fort.[p]
Ever towards the East on [*forth*].

Bis zu einer goldnen Pforten
Till to a golden portal
Du gelangst[t], da gehst[u] du ein[u];
Thou gettest, there goest thou in;
Denn das Irdische[v] wird dorten
For the Earthly will there
Himmlisch,[w] unvergänglich[x] seyn.
Heavenly, imperishable be.

Abend ward's[y] und wurde Morgen,
Evening grew it, and grew morning,
Nimmer,[z] nimmer stand ich still;
Never, never stood I still;
Aber immer[z] blieb's verborgen[aa]
But ever remained-it hidden
Was ich suche, was ich will.
What I seek, what I wish [*will*].

---

[p] wandle and fort: from fortwandeln; see L. of Pr. 22, *b*.

[q] Weg: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.

[r] offen: see L. of Ch. 12.

[s] Aufgang: literally, the *up-going* (of the sun); hence, the East; from aufgehen, to *go up*; see L. of Pr. 14, *a*.

[t] gelangst: gelangen (see L. of Pr. 5) comes from lang, *long*; langen, *to long for*.

[u] gehst and ein: from eingehen; see L. of Pr. 19, *a*.

[v] irdisch (see L. of Aff. 12): from Erde, *earth*; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*.

[w] himmlisch (see L. of Aff. 12); from Himmel, *heaven*.

[x] unvergänglich: from gehen, *to go*; see L. of Ch. 18, *a*; vergehen [*forgo*], to pass away, perish; see L. of Pr. 10, *a*; vergangen, bygone, perished: vergänglich, perishable; see L. of Aff. 13, *b*; unvergänglich, imperishable; see L. of Pr. 48.

[y] rief's: for rief es.—Ward's: for ward es, which is the same as wurde es, from werden, to become.

[z] immer, contr. from je mehr [*aye-more*], *evermore*; and nimmer, from nie mehr, *never more*.

[aa] verborgen: from verbergen; see L. of Pr. 10, *a*. We have here

Berge lagen mir im Wege[ab],
Mountains lay to-me in-the way,
Ströme hemmten meinen Fuß;
Rivers [*streams*] barred [*hemmed-in*] my foot;
Ueber Schlünde baut' ich Stege,
Over gulfs built I paths,
Brücken[ac] durch[ad] den wilden Fluß.[ae]
Bridges across the wild river.

Und zu eines Stroms[af] Gestaden[ag]
And to a river's banks
Kam ich, der nach Morgen[ah] floß;
Came I, that towards the East flowed;
Froh vertrauend[ai] seinem Faden,
Gladly trusting to-his thread,
Warf ich mich in seinen Schooß.
Threw I myself into his lap.

Hin[aj] zu einem großen[af] Meere
Along to a great sea [*mere*, Lat. *mare*]
Trieb[aj] mich seiner Wellen[ak] Spiel;
Drove me his waves' play;

---

a whole family of words, both English and German:—bergen [*bury*], to hide, to shelter; see L. of Ch. 10, *b*; Burg, fortress; Bürger, one living in a fort or town (once all towns were fortified), a citizen; Bürge, a surety; borgen, to *borrow*; also *burgh*, *borough*, and *bury*, as in Edinburgh, Peterborough, Highbury; *burgher*, *burgess*, etc. etc.

[ab] mir im Wege: *to-me* in-the way, meaning "in *my* way." Im: contr. from in dem.

[ac] Brücken: from Brücke; see L. of Ch. 8.

[ad] durch: *through*; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 9, *b*.

[ae] Fluß: from fließen, *to flow* [Lat. *flu-*], are derived: Fluß [Lat. *fluvius*, French *fleuve*], a *river*; Fluth, a *flood*; Flotte, a *fleet*; flott, *afloat*, etc. With fließen are also connected: fliegen, *to fly*; Fliege, a *fly*; fliehen, *to flee*; Floh, a *flea*; Flug and Flucht, *flight*; Flügel, a *wing*, etc.

[af] Strom, groß, and dort: see L. of Ch. 16, *c*.

[ag] Gestade: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

[ah] Morgen: means *morning* (see L. of Ch. 10, *b*); hence, the East.

[ai] vertrauend: from vertrauen; see L. of Pr. 10, *c*.

Vor mir liegt's in weiter Leere,
Before me lies-it in wide emptiness,
Näher bin ich nicht dem Ziel.
Nearer[*nigher*] am I not to-the goal.

Ach, kein Steg will dahin[al] führen!
Alas, no path will thither lead!
Ach, der Himmel über mir
Alas, the Heaven above[*over*] me
Will die Erde nie berühren[am],
Will the Earth never touch,
Und das Dort[af] ist niemals[an] hier.
And the Yonder [*there*] is never here.

SCHILLER.

Das Schloß[a] am[b] Meere[c].

THE CASTLE BY-THE SEA.

Hast du das Schloß gesehen,
Hast thou the Castle seen,
Das hohe Schloß am Meer?
The high Castle by-the sea?

[aj] hin and trieb: from hintreiben; see L. of Pr. 27.

[ak] seiner Wellen Spiel; his waves' play, for "the play of his waves." The Genitive is put first: this is a favourite construction with Schiller.

[al] dahin: from da, *there*, and hin, *hence*, away. See Diagram, p. 61.

[am] berühren: see L. of Pr. 1.

[an] niemals: from nie, *never*, and Mal, time; hence, niemals, at no time, not once. (Mal means time, in the same sense as the French *fois*).

---

[a] Schloß: from schließen, to shut or lock; whence Schloß [*slot*, see L. of Ch. 4, *b*], a lock; also, a locked or fortified place, castle.

[b] am: contr. from an dem, *on the*.

[c] Meer [Lat. *mare*, French *mer*]: conn. with *mere* in Windermere, etc.

Golden[d] und rosig[d] wehen[e]
Golden and rosy come-waving
Die Wolken drüber[f] her[e].
The clouds over-it —.

Es möchte[g] sich niederneigen[h]
It would-fain (itself) stoop down
In die spiegelklare[i] Fluth[j],
Into the mirror-clear flood,
Es möchte streben[k] und steigen
It would-fain strive and mount
In der Abendwolken Gluth[l].
Into the evening-clouds' glow.

Wohl hab' ich es gesehen,
Truly[*well*] have I it seen,
Das hohe Schloß am Meer,
The high Castle by-the sea,
Und den Mond drüber stehen[m],
And the moon over-it stand,
Und Nebel weit umher.
And mists[*nebula*] far[*wide*] around.

Der Wind und des Meeres Wallen,
The wind and the sea's motion [*wallowing*],

---

[d] golden and rosig: see L. of Aff. 8 and 11.

[e] wehen and her: from herwehen; see L. of Pr. 24.

[f] drüber: *thereover*, from dar (see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 16, *a*), and über; see L. of Ch. 20 and 14.

[g] möchte: the Subjunctive from mögen [*may*], to like; hence, es möchte, it would like to.

[h] niederneigen: see L. of Pr. 33.

[i] spiegelklare: from Spiegel, mirror, and klar, *clear*. Spiegel comes from the Lat. *speculum*, just as Ziegel, *tile*, from *tegulum*. The German spähen, the Engl. *spy*, and the Lat. *spec* or *spic* (as in spectator, inspect, conspicuous, etc.), are all one root.

[j] Fluth: see note [ae] to "Der Pilgrim."

[k] streben: see L. of Ch. 14.

[l] der Abendwolken Gluth: "the glow of the evening clouds;" see Note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—Gluth, *a glow*, from the Verb glühen, *to glow*; as the Engl. *growth*, from the Verb *to grow*.

Gaben sie frischen Klang?
Gave they (a) lively[*fresh*] sound?
Vernahmst[n] Du aus hohen Hallen
Heardst thou out-of high halls
Saiten und Festgesang[o]?
Harpstrings and festive-song?

Die Winde, die Wogen alle
The winds, the waves all
Lagen[p] in tiefer Ruh;
Lay in deep repose;
Einem Klagelied[q] aus der Halle
To-a death-song out-of the hall
Hört'[r] ich mit Thränen zu[r].
Listened I with tears —.

Sahst[w] Du oben gehen
Sawest thou above walking [*going*]
Den König und sein Gemahl?
The King and his Consort?
Der rothen Mäntel Wehen[s]?
The red mantles' waving?
Der goldnen Kronen Strahl[s]?
The golden crowns' beam?

Führten sie nicht mit Wonne
Led they not with delight
Eine schöne Jungfrau[t] dar,
A beautiful Maiden forth,

---

[m] und den Mond drüber stehen: means "and (I have seen) the moon stand over it."

[n] vernahmst: from vernehmen; see L. of Pr. 10, *c*. So the French *comprendre* (to comprehend), from *prendre*, to take.

[o] Festgesang: from Fest, *feast*, and Gesang, *song*; see L. of Pr. 43, *b*, and L. of Ch. 15.

[p] lagen: from liegen, *to lie*; see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.

[q] Klagelied; from Klage, wail, and Lied, a *lay* or song; hence, Klagelied, a lay of wail, a dirge.

[r] hörte and zu: from zuhören: see L. of Pr. 41.

[s] der rothen —— Strahl: "the waving of their red mantles, the beaming of their golden crowns;" see Note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."

[t] Jungfrau: from jung, *young*, and Frau, lady.

Herrlich[u] wie eine Sonne
Gloriously as a sun
Strahlend[v] im goldnen Haar?
Radiant in-her golden hair?

Wohl sah[w] ich die Eltern[x] beide[y]
Truly [*well*] saw I the Parents [*elders*] both
Ohne der Krone Licht,
Without the crown's light,
Im schwarzen[z] Trauerkleide[aa];
In-the black mourning-dress;
Die Jungfrau sah ich nicht.
The Maiden saw I not. UHLAND.

Mignon[a].

Kennst[b] Du das Land, wo die Citronen blühn[c],
Knowest thou the Land, where the citrons bloom,

---

[u] herrlich: see L. of Aff. 13, *a*.

[v] strahlend; from strahlen, to beam or radiate; Strahl, a beam, ray [*streak* or *stream*] of light.

[w] sah: see L. of Ch. 10, *a*; from sehen *to see*.

[x] Eltern: from alt *old*, see L. of Ch. 2 and 15; älter *older* or *elder*.

[y] beide: see L. of Ch. 18, *b*, and 1, *a*.

[z] schwarz: see L. of Ch. 6, *d*, and 4, *a*.

[aa] Trauerkleid: [*dreary-clothes*], from Trauer [*drear*, see L. of Ch. 16, *b*] sadness, and Kleid clothing; see L. of Ch. 18, *b*, and 1, *a*.

---

[a] Mignon is a beautiful character in Goethe's great work "*Wilhelm Meister*." Daughter of an Italian marquis, she has been kidnapped in early childhood, carried to Germany, and trained to be a rope-dancer. Wilhelm, seeing her brutally treated in a market-place, rescues her and adopts her as his own. In this song she utters, while in the cold North, her longing for the sunny South, the land of her birth; but only in vague terms, partly because her recollections are dim, and partly because her cruel master had made her swear not to reveal her origin.

[b] kennst: from kennen [*ken*]; corresponding to the Lat. *cognoscere*, and French *connaître*, that is, to *know by sight* (so that you could *recognize*) an individual person, or thing; while wissen corresponds to the Lat. *scire*, and French *savoir*, that is, to know some piece of *information*.

[c] blühen and glühen: see L. of Ch. 20.

Im[d] dunkeln Laub die Goldorangen glühn[c],
In-the dark[*dingy*] foliage[*leaf*] the gold-oranges glow,
Ein sanfter Wind vom[d] blauen Himmel weht,
A gentle[*soft*] wind from-the blue heaven blows[*waves*],
Die Myrthe[e] still, und hoch der Lorbeer[e] steht?
The myrtle still, and high the laurel stands?
Kennst Du es wohl?
Knowest thou it, I-wonder [*well*]?
Dahin[f], dahin
Thither, thither
Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Geliebter[g], ziehn[h].
Would I with thee, O my Beloved, travel.

Kennst Du das Haus? Auf Säulen ruht sein Dach[i],
Knowest thou the House? On pillars rests its roof,
Es[j] glänzt der Saal, es schimmert das Gemach[k];
There glitters[*glances*] the hall[*saloon*], there glimmers the chamber;
Und Marmorbilder[l] stehn und sehn[m] mich an[m]:
And marble-figures stand and look-at me —:

---

[d] im and vom: contr. from in dem and von dem.

[e] Myrthe: from the Lat. *myrtus*.—Lorbeer: from the Lat. *laurus*, and Beere *berry*.

[f] dahin: see Diagram, page 61.

[g] Geliebter: from lieben *to love*, see L. of Ch. 18, *c*, and 14; geliebt *loved* (for ge-, see L. of Ch. 10, *b*); ein Geliebter *a loved* (*one*).—This is the Masc. Noun; the Fem. would be, eine Geliebte.

[h] ziehen: (whence zog, note [j] to "Der Pilgrim"); conn. with *tow*, *tug*, *team*, etc.; see L. of Ch. 4, *a*, 18, *c*, and 10, *b*.

[i] Dach: conn. with decken to cover; the Engl. *to deck*, the *deck* of a ship, the *thatch* of a cottage; the Lat. *teg*, *tectum*, whence *protégé*, *protect*, *detect*, etc.; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 8.

[j] Es: see note [v] to "Der Erlkönig."

[k] Gemach: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

[l] Marmorbilder: from Marmor (Lat. *marmor*) *marble*, and Bild image.—Bild comes from bilden to form or shape; conn. with *build*.

[m] sehen and an: from ansehen; see L. of Pr. 13.

„Was hat man[n] dir, du armes Kind, gethan[o]?"
"What have they to-thee, thou poor Child, done?"
Kennst Du es wohl?
Knowest thou it, I-wonder?
Dahin, dahin
Thither, thither
Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Beschützer[p], ziehn[h].
Would I with thee, O my Protector, travel.

Kennst Du den Berg[q] und seinen Wolkensteg[r]?
Knowest thou the Mountain and its cloudy track?
Das Maulthier[s] sucht[t] im[d] Nebel seinen Weg[u];
The mule seeks in-the mist[*nebula*] its way;
In Höhlen[v] wohnt der Drachen alte Brut;
In caverns dwells the dragons' old brood;
Es[j] stürzt der Fels[w] und über ihn die Fluth[x];
There tumbles the rock and over it the flood;

---

[n] hat man: literally, "has one." The German man corresponds to the French *on* (derived from *homme* a man). It is often best translated by making the verb Passive; as, man sagt, French *on dit*, (one says), "it is said."

[o] gethan: from thun *to do*; see L. of Ch. 2.

[p] Beschützer: from schützen to shield or shelter [conn. with the Lat. *scutum* a shield, or *scutcheon*; Italian *scudo* a shield, also a Roman dollar, so called from the *escutcheon* stamped on it]; beschützen, see L. of Pr. 1; Beschützer, see L. of Aff. 4, *a.*—For "Protector," see note [i].

[q] Berg: whence Eisberg *iceberg*, ice-mountain.

[r] Wolkensteg: from Wolke cloud (see L. of Ch. 16, *c*), and Steg path (from steigen to mount).

[s] Maulthier: from the Lat. *mulus*, a *mule*, and Thier [*deer*; Greek *thēr*, whence *megatherium*, etc.] animal. *N.B.*—Things that first came from the South, have often kept their Latin names; as, Myrthe, Lorbeer, Marmor, Maulthier.

[t] sucht: from suchen; see L. of Ch. 9, *a*.

[u] Weg: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.

[v] Höhle: a *hole* or cave, from hohl *hollow*; whence some derive Hölle *hell*.

[w] Fels: conn. with *fell* (a mountain), as in "Scawfell," etc.

[x] Fluth: see note [ae] to "Der Pilgrim."

Kennst Du ihn wohl?
Knowest thou it, I-wonder?

Dahin, dahin
Thither, thither

Geht unser Weg[u]! o Vater, laß uns ziehn[h]!
Goes our way! O Father, let us travel!

GOETHE.

Ritter Toggenburg.

KNIGHT TOGGENBURG.

„Ritter[a], treue[b] Schwesterliebe[c]
" Knight! faithful [*true*] sister's-love
Widmet euch dies Herz[d].
Dedicates to-you this heart.
Fordert keine andere Liebe,
Demand no other love,
Denn es macht[e] mir Schmerz[f].
For it gives [*makes*] to-me pain [*smart*].

---

[a] Ritter: from reiten *to ride;* see note [a] to "Der Erlkönig."—Many German Verbs have *two* roots, a Weak and a Strong one. The Weak root of reiten is reit, and from it we make Reiter *rider*, horse-soldier; the Strong root is ritt, whence Ritter [*cavalier*] knight. In the same way, from the Weak and Strong roots of schneiden to cut, we have Schneider tailor [French *tailleur*, from *tailler* to cut]; but Schnitter reaper.—*Cavalier*, Spanish *caballero*, Italian *cavalliere*, and French *chevalier*, all come from *caballo, cavallo*, or *cheval* (horse), and originally meant a horseman.

[b] treu: conn. with *true*, *truth*, *troth*, *I trow*, *trust*, etc.; and with trauen (*to trust*, also *be-troth* or wed), Trost comfort, etc.

[c] Schwesterliebe: from Schwester, see L. of Ch. 6, *d*; and Liebe see L. of Ch. 18, *c*, and 14.

[d] Herz: see L. of Ch. 17, and 4, *a*.

[e] macht: from machen; see L. of Ch. 9, *a*.

[f] Schmerz: see L. of Ch. 6, *b*.

Ruhig mag ich euch erscheinen[g],
Quietly may I you appear,
Ruhig gehen sehen[g].
Quietly go see.
Eurer Augen stilles Weinen[h]
Your eyes' silent [*still*] weeping [*whining*]
Kann ich nicht verstehen."
Can I not understand."

Und er hört's[i] mit stummen Harme,
And he hears it with dumb grief [*harm*, pain],
Reißt[j] sich blutend los[j],
Tears himself bleeding away [*loose*],
Preßt sie heftig in die Arme[k],
Presses her vehemently into the arms,
Schwingt sich auf sein Roß,
Swings himself on-to his horse,
Schickt zu seinen Mannen[l] allen
Sends to his vassals [*men*] all
In dem Lande Schweiz[m];
In the land (of) Switzerland;

---

[g] Ruhig mag —— sehen: "I would-fain see you appear and see you go, without being (myself) fluttered."—Ruhig: see L. of Aff. 11. —Mag: from mögen, see L. of Ch. 10, *b*; and note [g] to "Das Schloß am Meere."

[h] Eurer Augen stilles Weinen: "The silent sadness of your eyes"; see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—For Auge, see L. of Ch. 16, *b*, and 10, *b*.—For Weinen, see note [n] to "Der Pilgrim."

[i] hört's: contr. from hört es.

[j] reißt and los: from losreißen; see L. of Pr. 30.

[k] in die Arme: means "into *his* arms."—The Article der, die, das, is often used for the Possessive Pronouns *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your*, *their*.

[l] Mannen: old and poetic, meaning "the *men* belonging to a feudal lord." *Men* in the usual sense is Männer.

[m] Schweiz: from schwitzen *to sweat*; see L. of Ch. 6, *d*, and 4, *a*.—Climbing their Alps causes the Swiss to sweat.

Nach dem heiligen[n] Grab[o] sie wallen,
To the Holy Grave they wander [*walk*],
Auf der Brust[p] das Kreuz[q].
On the breast the Cross.

Große[r] Thaten[s] dort geschehen
Great deeds there happen
Durch[t] der Helden Arm[u];
Through the heroes' arm;
Ihres Helmes Büsche[u] wehen
Their helmet's plumes [*bushes*] wave
In der Feinde Schwarm[u],
In the foemen's swarm,
Und des Toggenburgers Name
And the Toggenburgher's name
Schreckt[v] den Muselmann;
Scares the Mussulman;
Doch das Herz von seinem Grame
Yet [*though*] the heart from its grief
Nicht genesen kann.
Not recover can.

---

[n] heilig: see L. of Ch. 18, *b*; and L. of Aff. 11. Conn. with *hail! hale*, *health*, *to heal* (or make *whole*), to *hallow* (or make *holy*); hence Heilige a *hallow* or Saint (as in *Allhallows* or All-Saints). The Saviour is in German called der Heiland *the healing* (*one*).

[o] Grab: see L. of Ch. 14.—Das heilige Grab, means "the Holy Sepulchre."

[p] auf der Brust: means "on *their* breast"; see note [k].

[q] Kreuz: from the Lat. *crux*; see L. of Ch. 5.

[r] groß: see L. of Ch. 16, *c*, and 4, *b*.

[s] That: (from thun *to do*); see L. of Ch. 2, and 16, *a*.

[t] durch: see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 9, *b*.

[u] der Helden Arm: "the arm of the heroes"; see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—Ihres Helmes Büsche: "the plumes of their helmet."—In der Feinde Schwarm: "in the thickest of the foe."

[v] schreckt: from schrecken; conn. with *shriek*.

Und ein Jahr hat er's getragen [w],
And a year has he it borne,
Trägt's [w] nicht länger mehr,
Bears it not longer more,
Ruhe kann er nicht erjagen [x]
Peace [*rest*] can he not overtake
Und verläßt [y] das Heer,
And forsakes the army,
Sieht ein Schiff an Joppe's Strande,
Sees a ship on Joppa's strand,
Das die Segel bläht;
That its sails puffs-out [*blows*];
Schiffet [z] heim [z] zum [aa] theuren Lande,
Sails home to the dear land,
Wo ihr Athem [ab] weht.
Where her breath breathes [*waves*].

Und an ihres Schloßes [ac] Pforte [ad]
And at her castle's portal
Klopft [ae] der Pilger an [ae];
Knocks the Pilgrim —;
Ach! und mit dem Donnerworte [af]
Alas! and with this [*the*] thunderword

---

[w] getragen and trägt: from tragen to bear or carry; see L. of Ch. 10, *b.*—Trägt's for trägt es.

[x] erjagen: to hunt down, from jagen to hunt; see L. of Pr. 4, *a.*

[y] verläßt: from verlassen; see L. of Pr. 10, *a.*

[z] schiffet and heim: from heimschiffen; see L. of Pr. 23.

[aa] zum: for zu dem.

[ab] wo ihr Athem weht: means "Where she draws her breath."—Athem, conn. with the Greek *atmos*, *atmis*, smoke or steam.

[ac] Schlosses: from Schloß; see note [a] to "Das Schloß am Meere."

[ad] Pforte: from the Lat. *porta* gate; whence *porter* a gatekeeper, and French *porte* door. See L. of Ch. 12.

[ae] klopft and an: from anklopfen; see L. of Pr. 13.

[af] Donnerworte: from Donner (see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 19), and Wort, see L. of Ch. 2.

Wird sie aufgethan[ag]:
Is it opened:
„Die ihr suchet, trägt den Schleier,
" (She) whom you seek, wears the veil,
Ist des Himmels Braut.
Is (the) heaven's bride.
Gestern[ah] war des Tages Feier[ai],
Yesterday was the day's festivity,
Der sie Gott getraut[aj].
Which her to-God (has) wedded [be-*troth*-ed].

Da verlässet[y] er auf immer
Then forsakes he for ever
Seiner Väter Schloß[ak];
His fathers' castle;
Seine Waffen[al] sieht er nimmer[am]
His weapons sees he never-more,
Noch sein treues Roß.
Nor his faithful horse.

[ag] aufgethan: from aufthun [*up-do*]; see L. of Pr. 14, *b*.—In Old English, to *dup* [*do up*] is to open; to *don* [*do on*] is to put on; to *doff* [*do off*] is to take off.

" Then up he rose, and *donn'd* his clothes,
" And *dupp'd* the chamber-door."

" Thou wear a lion's hide? *Doff* it for shame,
" And hang a calf-skin on those recreant limbs!"
SHAKESPEARE.

Formerly doors hung down like curtains, and had to be lifted. The lid of a box is also lifted or *done-up* when it is *opened* (that is, *uppened*, put *up*).

[ah] gestern: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.

[ai] Feier: conn. with the Lat. *feriæ*, Germ. Ferien holidays.

[aj] getraut: for getraut hat; from trauen; see note [b].

[ak] seiner Väter Schloß: see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."

[al] Waffen: see L. of Ch. 12.

[am] nimmer: see note [z] to "Der Pilgrim."

Von der Toggenburg[an] hernieder[ao]
From the Toggenburg down
Steigt er unbekannt[ap],
Descends he unknown,
Denn es deckt[aq] die edeln Glieder
For there covers [*decks*] the noble limbs
Härenes Gewand[ar].
(A) hair garment.

Und er baut sich eine Hütte
And he builds himself a hut
Jener Gegend[as] nah,
To-that [*yon*] region nigh,
Wo das Kloster[at] aus der Mitte
Where the convent out-of the midst
Düstrer Linden sah;
Of-dusky lime-trees looked [*saw*];
Harrend von des Morgens Lichte[au]
Waiting from the morning's light
Bis zu Abends Schein,
Till (to) evening's sheen,

[an] Toggenburg: here means his Castle, from which he took his name.

[ao] hernieder: a compound of her and nieder, meaning the same as herunter; see Diagram, page 61.—Nieder: *nether*; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*.

[ap] unbekannt: "unrecognized"; see L. of Pr. 48.—Bekannt, from kennen; see note [b] to "Mignon."

[aq] es deckt: see note [v] to "Der Erlkönig"; and note [i] to "Mignon."

[ar] härenes: from hären *made of hair*; see L. of Aff. 8.—Gewand: see note [j] to "Der Erlkönig."—"A hairy garment covers his limbs," means "He has turned Monk."

[as] Gegend: from gegen *against*; see L. of Ch. 10, *b*; Gegend the scene facing you, over against you.

[at] Kloster: *cloister*, Lat. *claustrum*; from *claudere*, to *close*. See note [s] to "Mignon."

[au] Licht and Gesicht: see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.—For Gesicht see note [f] to "Der Erlkönig."

Stille Hoffnung[av] im Gesichte[au],
(With) silent hope in-the face,
Saß[aw] er da allein[ax],
Sat he there alone,

Blickte nach dem Kloster drüben[ay],
Looked towards the convent [*cloister*] opposite,
Blickte Stunden lang
Looked hours long
Nach dem Fenster seiner Lieben,
Towards the window of-his Love,
Bis das Fenster klang,
Till the window sounded [*clanged*],
Bis die Liebliche[az] sich zeigte,
Till the Lovely (one) herself showed,
Bis das theure Bild[ba]
Till the dear figure
Sich in's Thal[bb] herunterneigte[bc],
Herself into-the valley down-inclined,
Ruhig[bd], engelmild.
Peaceful, angel-mild.

Und dann legt'[be] er froh sich nieder[be],
And then laid he gladly himself down,
Schlief[bf] getröstet ein[bf],
Fell-asleep consoled —,

[av] Hoffnung: see note [n] to "Der Pilgrim."
[aw] saß: see L. of Ch. 4, *b*.
[ax] allein: from ein *one*; see L. of Ch. 18, *b*.
[ay] drüben: (from dar *there*, and über *over*, on the other side) means *over-yonder*, opposite; but drüber [*there-over*] means *over it*, see note [f] to "Das Schloß am Meere"; and droben [*there-above*] *up-there*.
[az] Liebliche: from lieben *to love*; lieblich *lovely*, see L. of Aff. 13, *b*; die Liebliche, the Adjective used as a Noun (Feminine).
[ba] Bild: see note [l] to "Mignon."
[bb] ins: for in das.—Thal: see L. of Ch. 2.
[bc] herunterneigte: from herunter [*here-under*] down, and neigen to incline; see L. of Pr. 28; and Diagram, page 61.
[bd] ruhig: see L. of Aff. 11.
[be] legte and nieder: from niederlegen; see L. of Pr. 33.
[bf] schlief and ein: from einschlafen; see L. of Pr. 19, *a*.—For schlafen see L. of Ch. 6, *a*, and 12.

Still sich-freuend[bg], wenn es wieder
Silently rejoicing, when it again
Morgen würde sein.
Morning should be.
Und so saß[aw] er viele Tage[bh],
And so sat he many days,
Saß viel' Jahre lang,
Sat many years long,
Harrend ohne Schmerz[f] und Klage[bi],
Waiting without pain and wail,
Bis das Fenster klang,
Till the window sounded,

Bis die Liebliche[az] sich zeigte,
Till the Lovely (one) herself showed,
Bis das theure Bild
Till the dear figure
Sich in's[bb] Thal herunterneigte[bc],
Herself into the dale down-inclined,
Ruhig[bd], engelmild.
Peaceful, angel-mild.
Und so saß[aw] er, eine Leiche[bj],
And so sat he, a corpse,
Eines Morgens da;
One morning there;
Nach dem Fenster noch das bleiche[bk],
Towards the window still the pale,
Stille Antlitz sah.
Silent face looked [*saw*]. SCHILLER.

[bg] sich freuend: from sich freuen to gladden oneself, to rejoice. Conn. with the Sanscrit (Old Hindoo) root *fri* love; hence *friand*, Freund or *friend*, means a loving one; freyen to woo or wed; Freyer a suitor; froh glad; fröhlich *frolic*, etc.—The German goddess, who (it is thought) answered to the Roman *Venus*, was called *Freya*; hence, Freitag *Friday*, is in Lat. *Veneris dies*, in Italian *Venerdi*, and in French *Vendredi*.

[bh] Tag: see L. of Ch. 2, and 10, *b*.

[bi] Klage: from klagen to wail.

[bj] Leiche: In Scotland the watching (or *waking*) beside a corpse is called *lyke-wake*.

[bk] bleiche: see L. of Ch. 8.

Sprüche[a].

SAYINGS.

Warum[b] bin ich vergänglich[c], o Zeus[d]? so fragte
Why am I perishable, o Zeus? so asked
die Schönheit[e].
— Beauty.
Macht' ich doch[f], sagte der Gott, nur das Ver-
Made I though, said the god, only the Pe-
gängliche[g] schön.
rishable beautiful.

Und die Liebe, die Blumen, der Thau und die Jugend
And — Love, — Flowers, the Dew and — Youth
vernahmen's[h];
heard it;
Alle gingen[i] sie weg[i], weinend, von Jupiter's Thron.
All went they away, weeping, from Jupiter's throne.

Früchte bringt das Leben[j] dem Mann; doch hangen
Fruits brings — Life to the man; yet hang
sie selten
they seldom

---

[a] Sprüche: from sprechen *to speak*; Spruch *a speech*, saying or saw (as in "wise saws"); see L. of Ch. 8.

[b] warum: (from was *what*, and um *about*), *what-about? what-for? wherefore?* why?

[c] vergänglich: see note [x] to "Der Pilgrim."

[d] Zeus: the Greek god, answering to the Roman *Jupiter*.

[e] die Schönheit: beauty; see L. of Aff. 2.

[f] machte ich doch: means "Why, I made."

[g] das Vergängliche: is here a neuter Noun, meaning "that which is perishable."

[h] vernahmen's: contr. from vernahmen es; see note [n] to "Das Schloß am Meere."

[i] gingen and weg: from weggehen; see L. of Pr. 38.

[j] Früchte ——— Mann: means "Life brings Fruits to the (grown up) man," answering to the Blossoms of his childhood. Früchte: from Frucht; see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

Roth[k] und lustig[l] am Zweig[m], wie uns
Red and gay [*lusty*] on-the branch [*twig*], as us
ein Apfel[n] begrüßt[o].
an apple greets.

Kinder[p] werfen den Ball an die Wand, und fangen
Children throw the ball at the wall, and catch
ihn wieder;
it again;
Aber ich lob' mir das Spiel, wirft mir der Freund
But I praise (me) the game, throws me the Friend
ihn zurück[q].
it back.

Halte das Bild der Würdigen[r] fest[s]! Wie leuch-
Hold the image of the Worthies fast! Like light-
tende[t] Sterne[s]
giving stars

---

[k] roth: see L. of Ch. 16, *c*, and 2.

[l] lustig: see L. of Aff. 11.—Lust is pleasure, desire or *lust*, as in "The *lusts* (desires) of the body"; hence gelüsten *to list*, as in "The wind bloweth where it *listeth*"; es gelüstet mich [*it listeth me*] I desire:—

"Me lists not (*I will not*) at this tide declare—"
SIR W. SCOTT.

[m] Zweig: see L. of Ch. 4, *a*.

[n] Apfel: see L. of Ch. 12.

[o] begrüßt: from grüßen *to greet*, see L. of Ch. 4, *b*; begrüßen, see L. of Pr. 1.

[p] Kinder: the plural of Kind; see note [b] to "Der Erlkönig."

[q] wirft mir der Freund ihn zurück: means "When a Friend throws it back to me," and not a mere Wall; that is, when thoughts are thrown back or reflected by another living Soul.—Wirft and zurück: from zurückwerfen; see L. of Pr. 42.

[r] Würdigen: plural of Würdige, a Noun formed from the Adjective würdig *worthy*; see L. of Aff. 11; and L. of Ch. 1, *a*.

[s] fest and Stern: see L. of Ch. 17.

[t] leuchtende: from leuchten; see the word Licht in L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

Theilte[u] sie aus[u] die Natur durch den unendlichen[v]
Dealt them out — Nature through — infinite
Raum.
space [*room*].

Wem zu glauben ist[w], redlicher Freund[x], das
(To) whom to believe (is), honest friend, that
kann ich Dir sagen:
can I to-thee tell [*say*]:
Glaube dem Leben; es lehrt[y] besser[z] als Redner[aa]
Believe (to-the) Life; it teaches better than orator
und Buch[ab].
and book.

Wißt[ac] ihr, wie auch der Kleine was ist?
Know ye, how also [*eke*] the Little(one) (some-)what is?
Er mache[ad] das Kleine
Let him do [*make*] the Little

---

[u] theilte and aus: from austheilen; see L. of Pr. 15, *a*.

[v] unendlich: see L. of Pr. 48.—For endlich, see L. of Aff. 13, *a*.

[w] Wem zu glauben ist: means, "Whom we are to believe"; the construction is the same as in the Lat. *cui sit credendum.*—Glauben comes from an old root laub, lob, etc., meaning, to *leave*, deposit; hence (ge-lauben or) glauben to *leave* with some one, to entrust, to *be-lieve*; Glaube *be-lief*; erlauben to *al-low*, give *leave*; loben (to allow or approve, hence) to praise; geloben to pledge or promise, whence our *glove*, which used to be given as a pledge of battle; etc., etc.

[x] Freund: see note [bg] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[y] lehrt: from lehren to teach; whence the Noun Lehre *lore*; see L. of Ch. 18, *a*.

[z] besser: see L. of Ch. 4, *b*.

[aa] Redner: see L. of Aff. 4, *b*.

[ab] Buch: derived from Buche; see L. of Ch. 8.

[ac] wißt: from wissen (see note [b] to "Mignon"; and L. of Ch. 4, *b*); conn. with *to wit*, "I *wist* not," *witty*, *wise*, *Witena-gemote* (meeting of the *witting* or knowing ones), etc., etc.—Hence Gewissen conscience (Lat. *con-scire* know-together); bewußt conscious, etc., etc.

[ad] Er mache: "*He make*"; the Subjunctive is used Imperatively, as in Latin.

Recht[ae]; der Große[af] begehrt just so das Große[af]
Rightly; the Great desires just so the Great

zu thun.
to do.

Wer ist denn wirklich[ag] ein Fürst[ah]? Ich habe es
Who is then really a prince? I have it

immer[ai] gesehen,
always seen,

Der nur ist wirklich Fürst, der es vermochte[aj] zu sein.
He only is really prince, who it was-able to be.

GOETHE.

Der junge Hase—(Fabel).
THE YOUNG HARE—(FABLE).

Mit ernstem Schritte, wie der Held
With solemn [*earnest*] stride, like the hero

Von Mancha[a], kam ein junger Hase
Of Mancha, came a young Hare

Nach-Haus, und seine wunde Nase
Home [*to-house*], and his wounded nose

Schien[b] laut zu rufen: Staune, Welt!
Seemed aloud to cry: Be-astounded, world!

[ae] recht: see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

[af] der Große: means "the great *man*," the article der being Masculine; but das Große "the great *thing*," the article das being Neuter. —So with der Kleine and das Kleine.

[ag] wirklich: from wirken *to work*, to act; see L. of Aff. 13, *b*.—So *actual*, and *real*, from the Lat. *actu-s* an act, and *re-s* a thing, affair.

[ah] Fürst: the *first* (that is, *foremost*) man in a nation; from vor *be-fore*.—The English *prince* is a corruption of the Lat. *prin-cep-s*, from *prim-us* first, and *cap-ere* to take.

[ai] immer: see note [s] to "Der Pilgrim."

[aj] vermochte: from mögen *may* or *can*, see L. of Ch. 9, *b*, and 10, *b*; vermögen to have the power (or *might*); see L. of Pr. 10, *c*.—Der es vermochte zu seyn: means "who *had-the-power* to be it, who *managed* (or *was-enabled*) to be it."

---

[a] "The hero of Mancha," was Don Quixote.

[b] schien: from scheinen *to shine*, appear, *seem*; conn. with *sham*.

„Du blutest, Neffe?" sprach ein Greis[c]
"Thou bleedest, nephew?" spoke a graybeard
Zu ihm, „was hat sich-zugetragen[d]?"
To him, "what has happened?"
„Je nun, ich habe mich-geschlagen[e],"
"Hey now, I have fought,"
Versetzt'[f] er, „und der Kampf war heiß[g]."
Replied he, "and the battle was hot."

„Was," rief[h] die ganze Sippschaft[i] aus[h],
"What," cried the whole kindred out,
„Geschlagen? wie? mit welchem Feinde[j]?
"Fought? how? with what foe?
Mit einem Hund?" „Ja, liebe Freunde[j],
With a hound?" "Yes, dear friends,
Mit einer ungeheuern[k] Maus."
With an enormous mouse."

K. G. Pfeffel.

---

[c] Greis: [*grizzled*], conn. with grau *gray*.

[d] zugetragen: from zutragen; see L. of Pr. 41.

[e] mich geschlagen: from sich schlagen (French *se battre*) to strike oneself, or to strike one another, hence to fight.—For schlagen, see L. of Ch. 6, *a*, and 10, *b*.

[f] versetzte: from versetzen; see L. of Pr. 10, *c*.

[g] heiß: see L. of Ch. 18, *b*, and 4, *b*.

[h] rief and aus: from ausrufen; see L. of Pr., 15, *a*.

[i] Sippschaft: see L. of Aff. 3, *b*.—Sipp is conn. with the Old English *sib* or *sip*, which means kinsman; hence *gossips* [*god-sib*] are those who had stood godfathers or godmothers to the same child.

[j] Feinde: conn. with the Engl. *fie!* and the Sanscrit word *fi* hate; whence *fiand*, Feind [*fiend*] *foe* means a hating one.—Freunde: see note [bg] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[k] ungeheuer: see L. of Pr. 48.

Das Johanniswürmchen[a]—(Fabel).
THE GLOW-WORM —(FABLE).

Ein Johanniswürmchen saß,
A Glow-worm sat,
Seines Sternenscheins
Of his star-shine
Unbewußt[b], im weichen[c] Gras
Unconscious, in-the soft grass
Eines Bardenhains.
Of-a bard's-grove.

Leise kroch[d] aus faulem Moos
Softly crept out-of rotten [*foul*] moss
Seine Nachbarin[e],
His neighbouress,
Eine Kröte, hin[d] und schoß
A Toad, up-to (him), and shot
All ihr Gift auf ihn.
All her poison upon him.

„Ach! was hab' ich dir gethan?"
"Alas! what have I to-thee done?"
Rief[f] der Wurm ihr zu[f].
Cried the Worm to-her —.

---

[a] Johanniswürmchen: [*John's-wormkin*]. The Glow-worm is called the "little St. John's-worm," because, according to an old German legend, St. John walked out one evening to meditate; and, while in loving contemplation of God and His works, he spied a little dark Worm at his feet. He took it up with a blessing and set it on a shrub, to prevent its being trodden on; but, transfigured by the Saint's touch, the Worm began to glow with love and beauty.—For Würmchen, see L. of Aff. 1.

[b] unbewußt: see L. of Pr. 48; and note [ac] to "Sprüche."

[c] weichen: from weich [*weak*, see L. of Ch. 9, *a*] soft, yielding to the touch; hence the Verb weichen to give way, to yield.

[d] kroch and hin: from hinkriechen; see L. of Pr. 27.

[e] Nachbarin: see L. of Aff. 5; and L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

[f] rief and zu: from zurufen; see L. of Pr. 41.

„Ei!" fuhr[g] ihn das Unthier[h] an[g],
"Ha!" snarled-at him the Monster —,
„Warum[i] glänzest du?"
"Why glowest [*glancest*] thou?"

K. G. Pfeffel.

Der Schmetterling[a] und die Biene—(Fabel).
THE BUTTERFLY AND THE BEE —(Fable).

Die Biene ließ[b] den Schmetterling
The Bee let the Butterfly
Einst[c] ihre fetten Speicher sehen.
Once her fat storehouses see.
„Schön!" rief der bunte Gast: „doch muß ich
"Fine!" cried the many-coloured guest: "yet must I
dir gestehen[d],
to-thee confess,
Ich tauschte[e]-nicht mit dir."—„Warum nicht?
I would-not-change with thee."—"Why not?
dummes Ding!
stupid thing!
Was hast denn Du? Laß sehn; wir wollen
What hast then thou? Let (us) see; we will
inventiren[f]:
make-an-inventory:

---

[g] fuhr and an: from anfahren; see L. of Pr. 13.—Fahren to drive, see note [q] to "Der Erlkönig"; anfahren, to drive-at, to attack, but chiefly in gruff words; hence our translation, "to snarl-at."

[h] Unthier: see L. of Pr. 45.

[i] warum: see note [b] to "Sprüche."

---

[a] Schmetterling: from schmettern (see L. of Aff. 17, *a*) to make a vibratory motion or sound, to flutter; Schmetterling [*flutter-ling*], see L. of Aff. 1.

[b] ließ: Past Tense of lassen; see L. of Ch. 4, *b*.

[c] einst: see L. of Ch. 3.

[d] gestehen: see L. of Pr. 5.

[e] tauschte: here it is the Subjunctive, "would change."

[f] inventiren: see L. of Aff. 19.

Ich hab' ein volles[g] Haus!"—„Und ich... nichts zu
I have a full house!"—"And I ... nothing to
verlieren[h]."
lose." PFEFFEL.

Des Esels[a] Trost[b] —(Fabel).
THE ASS'S CONSOLATION—(FABLE).

Hab' nichts, mich[c] dran[d] zu freuen[c],
(I) have nothing —— whereat to rejoice,
Bin dumm und ungestalt[e],
Am stupid and mis-shapen,
Ohne Muth[f] und ohne Gewalt[g];
Without courage and without strength;

---

[g] volles: from voll; see L. of Ch. 19.

[h] verlieren: see L. of Pr. 10, *a.*; and L. of Ch. 18, *c*. Notice the change of R into S, in lieren, *lose*, *lorn*, *lost*; see also note [b] to "Sprüche."

---

[a] Esel: from the Lat. *asinus* an ass, *asellus* a little ass.—The Ass was no doubt introduced both into Germany and Britain by the Romans, or at all events from the South of Europe; hence our Latin names for the animal. In like manner the words Myrthe, Lorbeer, Marmor, Maulthier; see note [a] to "Mignon."

[b] Trost: see note [b] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[c] mich freuen: see note [bg] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[d] dran: from dar *there*, and an *on*.

[e] ungestalt: see L. of Pr. 48.—Un is conn. with ohne.

[f] Muth: heart, courage [which comes from the French *cœur* heart]; conn. with *mood*, as, "to be in a sullen *mood*"; see L. of Ch. 2.—From Muth we have many interesting derivations; for example:—

MASCULINE.

Hochmuth [*high mood*] haughtiness.
Kleinmuth [*little mood*] pusillanimity.
Uebermuth [*over mood*] arrogance.
Unmuth (see L. of Pr. 45) ill-humour.
Freimuth [*free mood*] frankness.
Mißmuth (see L. of Pr. 44) displeasure.

FEMININE.

Demuth [*down mood*] humility.
Großmuth [*great mood*] magnanimity, generosity.
Schwermuth [*heavy heart*] melancholy.

NEUTER.

Gemüth (see L. of Pr. 43, *b*) mind, soul, heart, the emotions.

[g] Gewalt: see note [z] to "Der Erlkönig."

Mein[h] spotten und mich scheuen[i]
Of-me make-fun and me shun
Die Menschen[j] jung und alt[k];
— Men young and old ;
Bin weder warm noch kalt[k]!
(I) am neither hot [*warm*] nor cold !

Hab' nichts mich dran zu freuen,
(I) have nothing — whereat to rejoice,
Bin dumm und ungestalt,[e]
Am stupid and mis-shapen,
Muß Stroh[l] und Disteln[m] käuen,
Must straw and thistles chew [see L. of Ch. 8],
Werde[n] unter Säcken alt—
Grow under sacks old—

---

[h] mein: here an abbreviation of meiner, the Genitive case of ich.

[i] scheuen: to *shy-at* or *shun*, from scheu *shy*.

[j] Menschen: Mensch, like the Lat. *homo*, means *man* (not beast nor angel; therefore it includes man and woman); but Mann, like the Lat. *vir*, means *man* (not woman). The one refers to the Species, the other to the Sex. Mensch, however, was derived from Mann, being contr. from männisch; see L. of Aff. 12.

[k] alt and kalt: see L. of Ch. 15, and 2.

[l] Stroh: *straw* (from streuen *to strow*); see L. of Ch. 10, *a*.

[m] Disteln: from Distel; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*.

[n] werde: from werden to become, or come-to-be.—This Verb will bear many translations; for example:—

Ich wurde ein Kaufmann	I *became* a merchant.
Er wird reich	He *is-getting* rich.
Sie wurde krank	She *fell* sick.
Die Milch wird sauer	The milk *turns* sour.
Es werde Licht	Let there *be* light.

"Wie viel werde ich Dir nicht für diese Liebe schuldig! How much do I not *grow* indebted to thee for this love!"—Goethe.—"Daß dem Sterbenden werde sein Heil That salvation may *come* to the dying man."—Schiller.—"Und der wilde Strom wird zum Meere And the wild stream *swells* into a sea."—Schiller.

Thus werden always denotes a Process or Development.—"The Saxon peorðan (*weorthan*), equivalent to the German werden, means to *grow*, to *become*; traces of which old vocable are still found in the North-country dialects, as, 'What is *word* of him?' meaning 'What

Ach, die Natur schuf[o] mich im Grimme!
Ah, — Nature created me in-her [*in-the*] wrath [*grimness*]!
Sie gab mir nichts ...als eine schöne Stimme!
She gave me nothing...but a beautiful voice!

M. Claudius.

Das Veilchen.
THE VIOLET.

Ein Veilchen[a] auf der Wiese stand,
A Violet on the meadow stood,
Gebückt in sich und unbekannt[b]:
Bowed into itself and unknown:
Es war ein herzig's[c] Veilchen.
It was a darling [*hearty*] Violet.
Da kam die junge Schäferin[d]
There came the youthful Shepherdess
Mit leichtem Schritt und munterm Sinn
With light step [*stride*] and gay mood

---

is *become* of him?' and the like. Nay, we in modern English still say, 'Wo *worth* the hour' (Wo *befal* the hour), and speak of the '*Weird* Sisters'; not to mention the innumerable names of Places still ending in *weorth* or *worth*," such as Wandsworth or Woden's *worth*, "that is to say, *Growth*, Increase, or as we should now name it, *Estate*...... And indeed our common noun *worth*, in the sense of *value*, does not this mean simply, What a thing has *grown* to, What a man has *grown* to, How much he amounts to,—by the Threadneedle-street standard or another!"—T. Carlyle.

[o] schuf: from schaffen; see L. of Ch. 12.

---

[a] Veilchen: see L. of Aff. 1.—Both the English and the German have added a Diminutive Affix to the Latin name, as an expression of endearment to the little flower.

[b] unbekannt: from kennen, see note [b] to "Mignon"; bekennen, see L. of Pr. 1; of which the Past Participle is bekannt; whence unbekannt, see L. of Pr. 48.

[c] herzig: see L. of Aff. 11.

[d] Schäferin: from Schaf *sheep*, see L. of Ch. 16, *a*, and 12; Schäfer, see L. of Aff. 4, *b*; Schäferin, see L. of Aff. 5.

Daher[e], daher,
Along, along,
Die Wiese her und sang.
The meadow along, and sang.

Ach! denkt das Veilchen, wär' ich nur
Ah! thinks the Violet, were I but
Die schönste Blume der Natur,
The fairest [*bloom*] flower of (-the) nature,
Ach, nur ein kleines Weilchen[f],
Ah, only a little wee-while,
Bis mich das Liebchen[f] abgepflückt[g],
Till me the Darling (had) plucked-off,
Und an dem Busen matt gedrückt!
And on the bosom faint pressed!
Ach nur, ach nur
Ah only, ah only
Ein Viertelstündchen[h] lang!
A little-quarter-of-an-hour long!

Ach! aber ach! das Mädchen[i] kam
Ah! but ah! the Maiden came,
Und nicht in Acht das Veilchen nahm[j],
And not into heed the Violet took,
Ertrat[k] das arme Veilchen.
Trod-to-death the poor Violet.

---

[e] daher: see Diagram, page 61.

[f] Weilchen and Liebchen: see L. of Aff. 1.

[g] abgepflückt: from pflücken, see L. of Ch. 12; abpflücken, see L. of Pr. 12.

[h] Viertelstündchen: from vier *four*, see L. of Ch. 18, *c*; Viertel [contr. from der vierte Theil the fourth part] quarter; Stunde hour; Viertelstunde quarter of an hour; Viertelstündchen, see L. of Aff. 1.

[i] Mädchen: (from the old word Maid *maid*), see L. of Aff. 1.—The Nouns Mädchen, Liebchen, Veilchen are all of Neuter gender, because Diminutives in -chen and -lein are always Neuter.

[j] Und nicht —— nahm: The whole line means, "And took no heed (or notice) of the Violet."

[k] ertrat: from ertreten; see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

Es sank und starb[l], und freut'-sich[m] noch:
It sank and died, and rejoiced still:
Und sterb' ich denn, so sterb' ich doch[n]
And die I then, so die I yet [*though*]
Durch[n] sie, durch sie,
Through her, through her,
Zu ihren Füßen[o] doch.
At her feet yet.

GOETHE.

Der Sänger[a].

THE MINSTREL.

„Was hör' ich draußen[b] vor dem Thor [s. L. of Ch. 2],
"What hear I outside before the gate,
Was auf der Brücke[c] schallen [see L. of Ch. 7]?
What on the bridge sounding?
Laß den Gesang[d] vor unserm Ohr
Let the song before our ear [see L. of Ch. 16, *c*]
Im Saale wiederhallen[e]."
In-the hall resound."
Der König sprach's, der Page lief[f];
The king spake it, the page ran;

---

[l] starb: from sterben; see L. of Ch. 14, and 17.
[m] freute sich: from sich freuen; see note [bg] to "Ritter Toggenburg."
[n] doch and durch: see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 9, *b*.
[o] Füßen: from Fuß; see L. of Ch. 4, *b*.

[a] Sänger: read note [a] to "Ritter Toggenburg," as far as the word "reaper." From the Weak Root sing comes Singer a singer; from the Strong Root sang comes Sänger a minstrel or poet.

[b] draußen: from dar there, and aus out; hence daraußen or draußen *there-out*, outside; see note [ay] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[c] Brücke: see L. of Ch. 8.

[d] Gesang: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

[e] wiederhallen: see L. of Pr. 40; hallen is conn. with *halloo! holloa! howl*, etc.

[f] lief: from laufen; see L. of Ch. 12.

Der Knabe[g] kam, der König rief:
The boy came, the king cried:
„Laßt[h] mir herein[h] den Alten[i]."
"Let-in to-me ——— the old (man)."

Gegrüßet[j] seid mir, edle[k] Herrn,
Greeted be (by) me, noble Lords,
Gegrüßt ihr, schöne Damen[l].
Greeted ye, fair Ladies.
Welch' reicher Himmel! Stern bei Stern,
What (a) rich heaven! Star by star [see L. of Ch. 17],
Wer kennet ihre Namen?
Who knows their names?
Im Saal voll Pracht[m] und Herrlichkeit[n]
In-the hall full (of) splendour and lordliness
Schließt, Augen, euch[o]; hier ist nicht Zeit[p]
Close, eyes, yourselves; here is no time

---

[g] Knabe: see note [o] to "Der Erlkönig."

[h] laßt and herein: from hereinlassen; see L. of Pr. 28; and the Diagram, page 61.

[i] den Alten: means "the old *man*," because it has the Masc. Article; were it Fem., it would be die Alte, and Neut. das Alte; see note [af] to "Sprüche."

[j] gegrüßt: from grüßen; see L. of Ch. 4, *b*.

[k] edle: from edel; see L. of Ch. 1, *a*.

[l] Damen: from Dame, which, like our *dame*, is borrowed from the French.—From the Lat. *dominus* lord, come the Spanish *Don*, and our "the dons"; and from *domina* lady, come the Spanish *Doña*, the Italian *Donna* (as in Madonna), and the French *dame*.

[m] Pracht: see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

[n] Herrlichkeit: see L. of Aff. 13, *a*, and 2.

[o] Schließt, Augen, euch: means "Be shut, mine eyes."—For schließen, see note [a] to "Das Schloß am Meere"; for Augen, L. of Ch. 16, *b*, and 10, *b*; for euch, 9, *b*.

[p] Zeit: (see L. of Ch. 4, *a*, and 2); conn. with *tide* in noontide, Whitsuntide, etc.; with *betide*; and also with *the tide*, because it occurs or betides at regular *times*: Zeitung is *tidings*, news, newspaper.

"'Tis at such a *tide* and hour
"Wizard, witch and fiend have power."—Sir W. Scott.

"What hath this day deserved, what hath it done,
"That it in golden letters should be set
"Among the *high-tides* in the calendar?"
King John, act iii. scene 1.

Sich staunend[q] zu ergötzen [see L. of Pr. 4, *a*].
One's self wondering to delight.

Der Sänger drückt'[r] die Augen ein[r],
The minstrel pressed the eyes in,
Und schlug in vollen Tönen;
And struck [see L. of Ch. 10, *b*] in full tones;
Die Ritter[s] schauten[t] muthig[u] drein[v],
The knights looked bravely on,
Und in den Schooß die Schönen.
And into the lap the Fair (ones).
Der König, dem das Lied gefiel[w],
The king, (to) whom the lay pleased,
Ließ ihm, zum Lohne für sein Spiel,
Let to-him, as-the reward for his playing,
Eine goldne Kette[x] bringen.
A golden chain be-brought [*bring*].

Die goldne Kette gieb mir nicht,
The golden chain give me not,
Die Kette gieb den Rittern,
The chain give to-the knights,
Vor deren kühnem Angesicht[y]
Before whose bold [*keen*] countenance [*visage*]
Der Feinde Lanzen[z] splittern.
The foeman's lances splinter.

---

[q] staunend: from staunen to be [*stunned*] *astounded, astonied, astonished*, etc.

[r] drückte and ein: from eindrücken; see L. of Pr. 19, *a*.

[s] Ritter: see note [a] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[t] schauten: from schauen, conn. with *show*.

[u] muthig: see L. of Aff. 11; and note [f] to "Des Esels Trost."

[v] drein: for darein *thereinto*; from dar *there*, and ein *in*.

[w] gefiel: from gefallen; see L. of Pr. 5.

[x] Kette: conn. with the Lat. *catena* (whence *con-catenation*; and even *chain*, through the French *chaîne*, contr. from *chatène*).

[y] Angesicht: (see note [f] to "Der Erlkönig"), from ansehen; see L. of Pr. 13.

[z] Der Feinde Lanzen: see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—This Poem, however, is by Goethe

Gieb sie dem Kanzler, den du hast,
Give it to-the chancellor, whom thou hast,
Und laß ihn noch die goldne Last
And let him yet this golden burden [*load*]
Zu[aa] andern Lasten tragen.[ab]
To other burdens carry.

Ich singe wie der Vogel[ab] singt,
I sing as the bird [*fowl*] sings,
Der in den Zweigen[ac] wohnet;
That in the branches [*twigs*] dwells;
Das Lied, das aus der Kehle dringt,
The lay, that out-of the throat forces-its-way [*throngs*],
Ist Lohn, der reichlich[ad] lohnet;
Is reward, which richly rewards;
Doch, darf ich bitten,[ae] bitt' ich eins[af]:
Yet, dare I beg, beg I one (thing):
Laß mir[ag] den besten Becher Weins
Let to-me the best cup [*beaker*] of wine
In purem Golde reichen[ag].
In pure gold be-handed [*reach*].

Er setzt'[ah] ihn an[ah], er trank[ai] ihn aus[ai]:
He put it to (his lips), he drank it up:
O Trank[am] voll süßer Labe!
O drink full of-sweet refreshment!
O dreimal[aj] hochbeglücktes[ak] Haus,
O thrice highly-favoured house,

[aa] zu: see L. of Ch. 4, *a*; it here means "in addition to."
[ab] tragen and Vogel: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.
[ac] Zweigen: from Zweig; see L. of Ch. 4, *a*.
[ad] reichlich: see L. of Aff. 13, *a*.
[ae] darf ich bitten: means "if I may beg."
[af] eins: from ein; see L. of Ch. 18, *b*.—Eins means "one *thing*," the addition of the s has made it Neuter.
[ag] Laß mir reichen: means "Let (some one) reach to me."
[ah] setzte and an: from ansetzen; see L. of Pr. 13.
[ai] trank and aus: from austrinken; see L. of Pr. 15, *b*.
[aj] dreimal: from drei *three;* see note [an] to "Der Pilgrim."
[ak] hochbeglücktes: from beglücken, see L. of Pr. 1; hochbeglücken, see L. of Pr. 29.

Wo das ist kleine Gabe!
Where that is small gift!
Ergeht's[al] euch wohl, so denkt an mich,
Goes it (with) you well so think of me,
Und danket Gott so warm, als ich
And thank God as warmly as I
Für diesen Trunk[am] euch danke.
For this draught you thank. GOETHE.

Aus Wilhelm Meister.
OUT-OF WILHELM MEISTER.

Wer[a] nie sein Brod mit Thränen aß,
Who never his bread with tears ate,
Wer nie die kummervollen[b] Nächte[c]
Who never the sorrowful nights
Auf seinem Bette weinend saß,
On his bed weeping sate,
Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen[d] Mächte[c].
He knows[*kens*] you not, ye heavenly powers[*mights*].

Ihr führt[e] in's Leben uns hinein[e],
Ye introduce into life us ——,
Ihr laßt den Armen schuldig[f] werden,
Ye let the poor (one) guilty become,
Dann überlaßt[g] ihr ihn der Pein;
Then abandon ye him to-his torment [*pain*];
Denn alle Schuld[f] rächt sich auf Erden.
For all guilt avenges [*wreaks*] itself upon earth.
GOETHE.

[al] ergeht: from gehen (see L. of Ch. 18, *a*); ergehen, see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.
[am] Trank and Trunk: Trank is some *kind of drink* or beverage; Trunk is *a drink* (or *draught*) of it. Examples:—
Der Meth ist ein altdeutscher Trank=mead is an old German *drink*.
Gib mir einen Trunk Meth=give me a *drink* (or *draught*) of mead.

[a] Wer: see L. of Ch. 18, *a*.
[b] kummervoll: see L. of Aff. 16.
[c] Nächte and Mächte: from Nacht and Macht; see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.
[d] himmlisch: see L. of Aff. 12.
[e] führt and hinein: from hineinführen; see L. of Pr. 28, and Diagram, page 61.
[f] schuldig: see L. of Aff. 11; Schuld is conn. with sollen, see note [o] to "Der Erlkönig."
[g] überlaßt: from überlassen; see L. of Pr. 7.

Die Bürgschaft[a].
THE PLEDGE.

Zu Dionys, dem Tyrannen[b], schlich[c]
To Dionysius the Tyrant crept [*slunk*]
Damon, den Dolch im Gewande[d];
Damon, (with)the dagger[*dirk*] in-the garment;
Ihn schlugen[e] die Häscher[f] in Bande[g].
Him clapt the bailiffs into bonds.
„Was wolltest[h] Du mit dem Dolche? sprich!"
"What wouldest thou with the dagger? speak!"
Entgegnet'[i] ihm finster der Wütherich[j].
Replied to-him gloomily the cruel-man.
„Die Stadt[k] vom Tyrannen befreien[l]!"
"The town from-the tyrant to-free!"

---

[a] **Bürgschaft**: see note [aa] to "**Der Pilgrim**;" from **Bürge** surety, we get **Bürgschaft**; see L. of Aff. 3, *a*.

[b] **Tyrannen**: by *tyrannos* the Greeks meant a Usurper merely, and the word has nothing to do with his *manner* of governing.

[c] **schlich**: from **schleichen** (conn. with *slick*, *sleek*, *slink*, *sly*, *sleight-of-hand*, etc.); see L. of Ch. 6, *a*.

[d] **Gewand**: see note [j] to "**Der Erlkönig**."

[e] **schlugen**: see note [e] to "**Der junge Hase**;" **schlagen** to strike, refers here to the *riveting-on* of the chains.

[f] **Häscher**: see L. of Aff. 4, *a*.

[g] **Bande**: see note [a] to "**Ritter Toggenburg**" as far as "reaper."—From the Weak root **bind** *bind*, comes **Binde** a *bandage*; from the Strong root **band** *bound*, comes **Bande** *bonds*, fetters.

[h] **wolltest**: **wollte** *would*, is the Past tense of **wollen** *to will*; Lat. *volo, velle*; French *vouloir*.

[i] **entgegnete**: from **entgegen**, from **gegen** *a-gainst*; see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.

[j] **Wütherich**: see L. of Aff. 4, *a*; **Wuth** rage, is conn. with the Old English *wood*=mad.

[k] **Stadt**: here we have a whole family of words, all conn. with the Engl. *stay* and *stand*, and the Lat. *sta*: **stehen** [stay] to *stand*; **stand** *stood*; **Stand** a *standing*, station or state; (**Stunde** an hour; compare a *stint* of work, and to *stint*); **Statt**, **Stätte** a place or *stead*; **Statthalter** *stadholder*, one who is in the king's *stead*, in French *lieu-tenant*; **statt**, **anstatt** *instead of*; **stätig** *steady*; **stets** con*stantly*; **Stadt** a town or *stead* (as in Hampstead, Wanstead, etc.); **Stab** *staff*; **steif**, **starr** *stiff*; **starren** to look stiffly, *stare*; **stark** *stark*, *strong*; etc., etc.—From the Latin root STA we have **Staat** *state*; **Station** *station*; in like manner *stage*, *stable*, *establish*, *constable*, *distant*, etc.

[l] **befreien**: see L. of Pr. 1.

„Das sollst du am Kreuze bereuen[m]."
"That shalt thou on-the cross repent."

„Ich bin," spricht jener, „zu sterben
"I am," says the-other [*yon*], "to die [see L. of Ch.
bereit,
17 and 14] prepared [*ready*],
Und bitte nicht um mein Leben;
And beg not for my life [see L. of Ch. 14];
Doch willst du Gnade mir geben—
Yet [*though*] wilt thou grace to-me give—
Ich flehe dich um drei Tage[n] Zeit[o],
I entreat thee for three days time,
Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit[p]—
Till I my sister to-the husband (have) wedded—.
Ich lasse den Freund[p] dir als Bürgen[q];
I leave [*let*] my Friend to-thee as surety;
Ihn magst du, entrinn'[r] ich, erwürgen[s]."
Him mayst thou, escape I, strangle."

Da lächelt[t] der König[u] mit arger List,
There smiles the king with malicious [*arch*] cunning,

---

[m] bereuen: see L. of Pr. 1; conn. with *rue, rueful, ruesome, ruth, ruthless.*

[n] Drei Tage: for drei, see L. of Ch. 1, *a*; for Tag, see L. of Ch. 2, and 10, *b*.

[o] Zeit: see note [p] to "Der Sänger."

[p] gefreit: for freien and Freund, see note [bg] to "Ritter Togg."

[q] Bürge: see note [aa] to "Der Pilgrim."

[r] entrinnen: see L. of Pr. 3, *a*; entrinne ich means "if I escape."

[s] erwürgen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[t] lächeln: see L. of Aff. 17, *a*; and note [n] to "Der Erlkönig."

[u] König: from können *can*, be able; König the *canning* or able man [Anglo Sax. *cyning*, whence *king*].—"He is called *Rex*, *Regulator*, *Roi*; our own name is still better: *King*, *Könning*, which means *Canning*, *Able-man*."—T. Carlyle.

[v] kurz: see L. of Ch. 4, *a*.—From *curt* we get *curtail* [*court-tailler* to cut short]; Robert *Curt-hose*, etc.

Und spricht nach kurzem[v] Bedenken[w]:
And speaks after short consideration:
„Drei Tage[n] will ich dir schenken;
"Three days will I to-thee give;
Doch, wisse, wenn sie verstrichen[x], die Frist,
Yet, know, if it (has) gone-by, the term,
Eh' du zurück mir gegeben bist,
Ere thou back to-me given art,
So muß er statt[k] deiner erblassen[y],
So must he instead of-thee grow pale,
Doch dir ist die Strafe erlassen[z]."
But to-thee is the punishment[*strap, stripe*] let-off."

Und er kommt zum Freunde: „Der König[u] gebeut[aa],
And he comes to-the Friend: "The king commands,
Daß[ab] ich am Kreuz' mit dem Leben
That I on-the cross with my life
Bezahle[ac] das[ab] frevelnde Streben;
Pay-for the criminal attempt[*striving*; see L. of Ch. 14]
Doch will er mir gönnen[ad] drei Tage Zeit[o],
Yet will he to-me grant three days time [*tide*],

---

[w] Bedenken: see L. of Pr. 1.

[x] verstrichen: from verstreichen; see L. of Pr. 10, *a*.

[y] erblassen: see L. of Pr. 4, *b*.

[z] erlassen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[aa] gebeut: old and poetic for gebietet, from gebieten; see L. of Pr. 5.

[ab] daß and das: see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 4, *b*.

[ac] bezahle: from Zahl number [*tale*, see L. of Ch. 4, *a*, as in "The *tale* of the bricks"—Exodus v. 8; a milkman's *tally*; to pay *toll*, etc.]; whence zählen to number, count or *tell* (as a shepherd tells his sheep); erzählen to recount or *tell* (a story); and zahlen to pay (because the money is counted).—For bezahlen, see L. of Pr. 1.

[ad] gönnen: does not exactly mean *grant* or *give*, yet it means something more than *allow*; it is to allow willingly, gladly, not to grudge; whence mißgönnen to grudge (see L. of Pr. 6); Gönner patron; and Gunst favour.

Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit[p]:
Till I my sister to-the husband (have) wedded:
So bleib du dem König[u] zum[ae] Pfande,
So remain thou to-the king for-a pledge [*pawn*, see L. of Ch. 12 and 3],
Bis ich komme zu lösen[af] die Bande[g]."
Till I come to unloose thy [*the*] bonds."

Und schweigend umarmt[ag] ihn der treue[ah] Freund
And silently embraces him the faithful Friend
Und liefert[ai] sich aus[ai] dem Tyrannen;
And delivers himself up to-the tyrant;
Der Andere ziehet[aj] von dannen.
The Other travels from thence.
Und ehe das dritte Morgenroth[ak] scheint,
And ere the third daybreak shines,
Hat er schnell mit dem Gatten die Schwester vereint[al],
Has he quickly with the husband his sister united,
Eilt[am] heim[am] mit sorgender[an] Seele[ao],
Hastens home with anxious soul,
Damit er die Frist nicht verfehle[ap].
That he the term not may-miss.

[ae] zum: contr. from zu dem *to the*; so, in the Bible, "he took her *to* wife," meaning *for* a wife, *as* a wife."

[af] lösen: from los *loose*.

[ag] umarmen: see L. of Pr. 8.

[ah] treue: see note [b] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[ai] liefert and aus: from ausliefern; see L. of Pr. 15, *b*.

[aj] ziehet: from ziehen; see the Etymological Tree at the end of the Book.

[ak] Morgenroth: *morning-red*, the red of morning.

[al] vereinen: see L. of Pr. 10, *c*; hence Verein *union*; and Zollverein [*toll-union*] a *Union* formed by several German States to manage their *tolls* or custom-duties in common.

[am] eilt and heim: from heimeilen; see L. of Pr. 23.

[an] sorgender: Sorge care (see L. of Ch. 10, *b*); sorgen to care; sorgend caring, anxious.

[ao] Seele: see L. of Ch. 18, *a*.

[ap] verfehlen: see L. of Pr. 10, *a*.

Da gießt[aq] unendlicher[ar] Regen[as] herab[aq],
There pours[*gushes*] endless[*un-end-like*] rain down,
Von den Bergen stürzen die Quellen,
From the mountains tumble the springs [*wells*],
Und die Bäche, die Ströme schwellen[at],
And the brooks[*becks*], (and) the rivers swell,
Und er kommt an's[au] Ufer mit wanderndem Stab[av],—
And he comes to-the shore with wandering staff,—
Da[aw] reißet[ax] die Brücke der Strudel hinab[ax],
There tears the bridge the whirlpool down,
Und donnernd sprengen[ay] die Wogen
And thundering burst the waves

[aq] gießt and herab: from herabgießen; see L. of Pr. 28, and Diagram, page 61.

[ar] unendlich: (from endlich, see L. of Aff. 13, *a*); see L. of Pr. 48.

[as] Regen: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.

[at] schwellen: see L. of Ch. 6, *d*.

[au] an's: contr. from an das.

[av] Stab: see note [k]; and L. of Ch. 14.

[aw] Da—etc.: the meaning of this and the two following lines is: "Then the whirlpool tears the bridge down; and the waves, "thundering, burst the cracking arch (that is, arches) of its vault-"ing."—Der Strudel is the Nominative to reißet, and die Wogen to sprengen.

[ax] reißet and hinab: from hinabreißen; see L. of Pr. 28, and Diagram, page 61.

[ay] sprengen: from springen to spring:—

From		Is derived the CAUSATIVE Verb	
springen	*to spring*	sprengen	to cause to spring; to *spring* (as a mine); to burst (something).
winden	*to wind* (as a road or river)	wenden	to cause to wind; to *wend* or turn (something).
hangen	*to hang* (as a picture hangs)	hängen	to *hang up* (as we hang a picture).
sinken	*to sink* (as a ship sinks)	senken	to *sink* (as we sink a ship).
trinken	*to drink*	tränken	to cause to drink, to *drench*.
sitzen	*to sit*	setzen	to *set*.
liegen	*to lie*	legen	to *lay*.

We see by this List, that some Verbs, *by changing the vowel*, become Causative (and therefore Transitive).

N.B.—These Causative Verbs are always Regular.

Des Gewölbes[az] krachenden[ba] Bogen[bb].
The vaulting's cracking arch [*bow*].

Und trostlos[bc] irrt er an Ufers Rand[bd];
And disconsolate strays[*errs*]he on(the)shore's brink;
Wie[be] weit er auch[be] spähet[bf] und blicket,
How far[*wide*] he soever spies and looks,
Und die Stimme, die rufende, schicket,
And the voice, the calling (one), sends,
Da stößet kein Nachen[bg] vom[bh] sichern Strand,
There pushes no boat from-the safe [*secure*] strand,
Der ihn setze[bi] an das gewünschte Land,
That him may-set on the wished-for land,
Kein Schiffer[bj] lenket die Fähre[bk],
No boatman guides the ferry,
Und der wilde Strom wird[bl] zum Meere[bm].
And the wild stream grows into-a sea.

Da sinkt er an's[au] Ufer und weint und fleht,
There sinks he on-the shore and weeps and prays [Scotch *fleach*],
Die Hände zum Zeus[bn] erhoben[bo]:
His hands to (the) Jupiter uplifted:

[az] Gewölbe: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.
[ba] krachend: from krachen; see L. of Ch. 9, *a*.
[bb] Bogen: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.
[bc] trostlos: see L. of Aff. 14; and note [b] to "Ritter Toggenburg."
[bd] Rand: see L. of Ch. 3.
[be] wie and auch go together, and mean "how-ever."
[bf] spähet: see note [l] to "Das Schloß am Meere."
[bg] Nachen: conn. with the Lat. *navis* ship; whence *navy*, *naval*, *navigation*, etc.
[bh] vom: contr. from von dem.
[bi] setzen: see note [ay].
[bj] Schiffer: see L. of Aff. 4, *b*; and L. of Ch. 7, and 12.
[bk] Fähre: see notes [a] and [q] to "Der Erlkönig."
[bl] wird: see note [n] to "Des Esels Trost."
[bm] Meere: see note [c] to "Das Schloß am Meere."
[bn] Zeus: the Greek God corresponding to the Roman Jupiter.
[bo] erheben: see L. of Pr. 4 *a*.—For heben; see L. of Ch. 14.

„O hemme des Stromes [L. of Ch. 16, *c*]
"Oh check [*hem-in*] the river's
Toben!
raging!
Es eilen die Stunden,[bp] im Mittag[bq] steht
There hasten the hours, at [*in-the*] mid-day stands
Die Sonne, und wenn sie niedergeht[br],
The sun, and if it goes-down
Und ich kann die Stadt[k] nicht erreichen[bs],
And I can the town not reach,
So muß der Freund mir erbleichen[bs]."
So must the Friend to-me die [*grow-pale*]."

Doch wachsend[bt] erneut[bu] sich des Stromes
But [*though*] increasingly renews itself the river's
Muth[j],
rage,
Und Welle auf Welle zerrinnet[bv]
And wave upon wave breaks,
Und Stunde an Stunde entrinnet[r];
And hour after [*on*] hour slips-away;
Da treibt[bw] ihn die Angst[bx], da faßt[by] er sich
Then drives him (the) anguish, then takes he (to-himself)
Muth[bz]
courage,

[bp] Es eilen die Stunden: see note [v] to "Der Erlkönig."—For Stunde, see note [k] to this Poem.

[bq] Mittag: see L. of Ch. 2.

[br] niedergehen: see L. of Pr. 33.

[bs] erreichen and erbleichen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a* and *b*.

[bt] wachsend: from wachsen to *wax* (as "the waxing moon"), to grow.

[bu] erneuen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[bv] zerrinnen: see L. of Pr. 11.

[bw] treiben: see L. of Ch. 2, and 14.

[bx] Angst: conn. with *anxiety*, *anguish*; the Lat. *angustus* narrow, pinching; and *angustia*, narrowness, strait, distress.

[by] faßt: see note [aa] to "Der Erlkönig."

[bz] Muth: see note [f] to "Des Esels Trost."

Und wirft[ca] sich hinein[ca] in die brausende Fluth[cb]
And throws himself in, into the roaring flood,
Und theilt[cc] mit gewaltigen[cd] Armen
And parts [*deals*] with mighty arms
Den Strom—und ein Gott hat Erbarmen[co].—
The stream—and a god has pity.—

Und gewinnet [L. of Pr. 5] das Ufer, und eilet fort
And (he) gains [*wins*] the shore, and hastens on
Und danket dem rettenden Gotte;
And thanks the rescuing god;
Da stürzet[ce] die raubende Rotte
Then bursts the robbing gang [*rout*]
Hervor[ce] aus des Waldes[cf] nächtlichem[cg] Ort[ch],
Forth out-of the forest's nightlike place,
Den Pfad ihm sperrend[ci], und schnaubet Mord
The path to-him barring, and breathes [*snuffs*] murder

[ca] wirft and hinein: from hineinwerfen; see L. of Pr. 28; and Diagram, page 61.

[cb] Fluth: see note [ae] to "Der Pilgrim."

[cc] theilen: see L. of Ch. 2.

[cd] gewaltig: see note [z] to "Der Erlkönig;" and L. of Aff. 11.

[ce] stürzt and hervor: from hervorstürzen; see L. of Pr. 26.

[cf] Wald: conn. with *wild*, *wold*, *wood*, etc.

[cg] nächtlich: see L. of Aff. 13, *a*,

[ch] Ort: conn. with the Scotch *airt*, a direction or quarter of the heavens:—

"Of a' the *airts* the wind can blow,
"I dearly love the West."—Burns.

[ci] den Pfad ihm sperrend: "*the path to-him* barring" means "barring *his path*."—The Dative case (*to me*, *to thee*, *to him*, etc.) is often used instead of the Possessive Pronoun (*my*, *thy*, *his*, etc.); as, "Ich habe mir den Arm zerbrochen I have *to-me* the arm broken," instead of "I have broken *my* arm." So in Latin, "Linguam *ei* præcidam, The-tongue *to-him* I-will-cut-off," for "I will cut off *his* tongue"—Plautus.—"Mitigati erant animi *raptis*, Soothed were the-minds *to-the-captive-women*," for "*The-captive-women's* minds were soothed"—Livy, i. 10.—Sperren: conn. with *spar*, a bar or crossbeam.

Und hemmet des Wanderers Eile
And checks the wanderer's haste
Mit drohend geschwungener[cj] Keule.
With threateningly brandished [*swung*] club.

„Was wollt ihr?" ruft er vor Schrecken
"What would ye?" cries he for terror [*shriek, &c.*]
bleich,
pale [*bleached, blank*],
„Ich habe nichts[ck] als mein Leben[cl],
"I have nothing but my life,
Und das muß ich dem Könige geben[cl]!"—
And that must I to-the king give!"—
Und entreißt[cm] die Keule dem nächsten
And snatches the club (from) the nearest[*nighest, next*]
gleich:
quickly:
„Um[cn] des Freundes willen[cn], erbarmet euch[co]!"—
"For my friend's sake, have mercy!"—
Und drei mit gewaltigen[cd] Streichen[cp]
And three with mighty blows
Erlegt[cq] er, die andern entweichen[cr].
Slays he, the others escape.

[cj] geschwungen: from schwingen; see L. of Ch. 6, *d*.

[ck] nichts: from the Old German icht *aught*; see L. of Ch. 9, *b*.

[cl] Leben and geben: see L. of Ch. 14.

[cm] entreißen: see L. of Pr. 3, *a*.

[cn] um and willen go together, meaning "for (some one's) *will*, pleasure or benefit."

[co] erbarmet euch: from the Reflective Verb sich erbarmen. Barm in Old German meant tender; whence barmherzig tenderhearted, merciful; erbarmen to make tender; sich erbarmen to soften oneself, to take pity; and the Noun Erbarmen mercy.

[cp] Streich: a blow; from streichen; see L. of Ch. 9, *a*, and 18, *b*.

[cq] erlegen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.—For legen, see note [ay].

[cr] entweichen: see note [c] to "Das Johanniswürmchen;" and L. of Pr. 3, *a*.

Und die Sonne versendet[cs] glühenden Brand[ct],
And the sun sends-forth glowing fire,
Und von der unendlichen[ar] Mühe
And with the infinite toil
Ermattet[cu], sinken die Kniee:
Wearied, sink the knees:
„O hast du mich gnädig[cv] aus Räubershand[cw],
"Oh hast thou me graciously out-of robber's hand,
Aus dem Strom mich gerettet an's heilige[cx] Land,
Out-of the stream me rescued to the blessed [*holy*] land,
Und soll hier verschmachtend[cy] verderben[cy],
And shall (I) here pining-away perish,
Und der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben!"
And the Friend to-me, the loving-one, die [*starve*]!"

Und horch [see note [cg]]! da sprudelt[cz] es silberhell,
And hark! there bubbles it clear-as-silver,
Ganz nahe, wie rieselndes[cz] Rauschen;
Quite nigh, like (a) purling rushing;
Und stille hält[da] er zu lauschen,
And silent [*still*] keeps he to listen,
Und sieh', aus dem Felsen[db], geschwätzig[dc], schnell,
And lo[*see*], out-of the rock, babbling, swift,

[cs] versenden: see L. of Pr. 10, *a*.

[ct] Brand: a burning [*brand, firebrand*]; from brennen to *burn*; whence also Branntwein [*burnt-wine*] *brandy*; braun *brown*, etc.

[cu] ermatten: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[cv] gnädig: see L. of Aff. 11.

[cw] Räuber: see L. of Aff. 4, *a*. Rauben is conn. with the Lat. *rap* snatch: whence *rapid*, *rapt*, *rapture*, "*rape* of the Sabines," etc. Hence berauben *bereave*.

[cx] heilig: see note [n] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[cy] verschmachten and verderben: see L. of Pr. 10, *a*.

[cz] sprudeln and rieseln: see L. of Aff. 17, *a*.

[da] hält: from halten; see L. of Ch. 15, and 2.

[db] Fels: *fell*, as in Scawfell, Snaefell, etc.

[dc] geschwätzig: (from Geschwätz; see L. of Pr. 43, *b*); see L. of Aff. 11.

Springt[dd] murmelnd hervor[dd] ein lebendiger[de]
Springs murmuring forth a living
Quell,
fountain [*well*],
Und freudig[de] bückt[df] er sich nieder[df]
And joyfully bows he himself down
Und erfrischet[dg] die brennenden[ct] Glieder.
And refreshes his burning limbs.

Und die Sonne blickt durch der Zweige Grün[dh]
And the sun looks through the branches'[*twigs'*] green,
Und malt auf den glänzenden Matten[L. of Ch, 2]
And paints on the gleaming[*glancing*] meadows
Der Bäume gigantische Schatten[dh].
The trees' gigantic shadows.
Und zwei Wanderer sieht er die Straße[di] ziehn,
And two wanderers sees he the highway travel,
Will eilenden Laufes[dj] vorüber fliehn,
Wishes (in) hastening course past (them) to-flee,
Da hört er die Worte sie sagen[dk]:
There hears he these words them say:
„Jetzt wird er an's Kreuz geschlagen[dl].“
"Now gets He to-the cross nailed."

[dd] springt and hervor: from hervorspringen; see L. of Pr. 26.

[de] lebendig and freudig: see L. of Aff. 11.

[df] bückt and nieder: from niederbücken; see L. of Pr. 33.—For bücken see biegen, L. of Ch. 10, *b*; and note [eg].

[dg] erfrischen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[dh] der Zweige Grün, and der Bäume gigantische Schatten: see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—The shadows are "gigantic," because the sun is low.

[di] Straße: *street* (see L. of Ch. 4, *b*), from the Lat. *strata via* a (*strown* or) paved way; whence our old Roman roads are still called Streets, as "Watling Street," which runs from Chester to Dover.

[dj] Lauf: from laufen (see L. of Ch. 12); so from the Lat. *currere* to run, comes *cursus* a *course;* and from *run*, comes a *race*.

[dk] Da hört er die Worte sie sagen: means "Then he hears them say these words."

[dl] Jetzt wird er an's Kreuz geschlagen: means "Now he *is-being*

Und die Angst beflügelt[dm] den eilenden
And — anguish lends-wings-to his hastening
Fuß,
foot [see L. of Ch. 4, *b*],

Ihn jagen der Sorge Qualen[dh];
Him chase — care's torments;

Da schimmern in Abendroths[dn] Strahlen
There glimmer in (the) sunset's rays [*streaks*]

Von ferne die Zinnen von Syrakus;
From far the pinnacles of Syracuse;

Und entgegen-kommt[do] ihm Philostratus,
And (there) meets him Philostratus,

Des Hauses redlicher Hüther[dp],
His [*the*] house's honest keeper [*heeder*],

Der erkennt[dq] entsetzt[dr] den Gebieter[ds].
He recognizes horror-struck his master.

„Zurück, du rettest den Freund nicht mehr[dt],
"Back, thou savest the Friend no more,

---

nailed to the cross." (Read note [n] to "Des Esels Trost," as far as "Development.")—Now, because werden denotes a Process or Development, it is used as the Auxiliary for the *Future* Tense, and also for the *Present Passive*. So we have—

Er wird schlagen=(he *is-getting* or *going* to beat), he *will* beat.
Er wird geschlagen=(he *is-getting* beaten), he *is-being* beaten.
But, Er ist geschlagen=(he *is* beaten, that is), he *has-been* beaten.

Geschlagen is from schlagen, see note [c]; both there and here it refers to the act of *striking*, there of riveting the chains, here of driving the nails through the hands and feet.

[dm] beflügeln: see L. of Pr. 1.—For Flügel, see note [ae] to "Der Pilgrim."

[dn] Abendroth: *evening-red*, the red of evening; see note [ak].

[do] entgegenkommen: see L. of Pr. 21.

[dp] Hüther: see L. of Aff. 4, *a*. The original meaning of hüthen (see L. of Ch. 2) was to *shelter*; hence Hütte *hut*, Hut [*hood*] *hat*, etc.

[dq] erkennen: see L. of Pr. 4, *b*. For kennen, see note [b] to "Mignon."

[dr] entsetzt: see L. of Pr. 3, *a*.

[ds] Gebieter: (from gebieten, L. of Pr. 5), see L. of Aff. 4, *a*.

[dt] mehr and Seele: see L. of Ch. 18, *a*.

So rette das eigene[du] Leben!
So save thy [*the*] own life!
Den Tod[dv] erleidet[dw] er eben.
—— Death suffers he even (now).
Von Stunde[k] zu Stunde gewartet'[dx] er
From hour to hour awaited he
Mit hoffender Seele[dt] der Wiederkehr[dy];
With hoping soul thy return;
Ihm konnte den muthigen Glauben[dz]
To-him could his brave faith
Der Hohn des Tyrannen nicht rauben[dz]."
The scoff of-the Tyrant not rob."

„Und ist es zu spät, und kann ich ihm nicht[ck]
"And is it too late, and can I to-him not
Ein Retter willkommen[ea] erscheinen[eb],
A saviour welcome appear,
So soll mich der Tod[dv] ihm vereinen[al].
So shall me — death to-him unite.
Deß[ec] rühme der blut'ge[ed] Tyrann sich nicht,
Of-this boast the bloody Tyrant (himself) not,

[du] **eigen**: see L. of Ch. 18, *b*; and 10, *b*.

[dv] **Tod**: see L. of Ch. 2; and 1, *a*; and 16, *c*.

[dw] **erleiden**: see L. of Pr. 4, *b*.

[dx] **gewartete**: from **gewarten**, see L. of Pr. 5; and note [p] to "Der Erlkönig."—Compare the *ward* of a lock; *church-warden; law-ward*, whence *lord*, etc.

[dy] **Wiederkehr**: from **wiederkehren**; see L. of Pr. 40.

[dz] **Ihm** —— **rauben**: the meaning of these two lines is, "The Tyrant's jeer could not rob him of his undaunted faith (in his friend)." —For **muthig**, see L. of Aff. 11; and note [f] to "Des Esels Trost."

[ea] **willkommen**: (from **Wille** *will*, and **kommen** *come*), means "*coming* in accordance with one's *will* or wishes."

[eb] **erscheinen**: see L. of Pr. 4, *b*.

[ec] **deß**: contr. from **dessen**, the Possessive case of **der**, when used as a Demonstrative Pronoun.

[ed] **blut'ge**: for **blutige**, see L. of Aff. 11.—The whole line means, "Let not the bloody Tyrant boast of this."

Daß der Freund dem Freunde gebrochen[ee] die
That the Friend to-the Friend (has) broken the
Pflicht[ef];
pledge;
Er schlachte[eg] der Opfer[eh] zweie[ei],
Let-him-slaughter (of-the) victims two,
Und glaube an Liebe[ej] und Treue[ek]."
And believe in Love and Faithfulness [*truth*]."

Und die Sonne geht[el] unter[el]— da steht er am
And the sun goes down —there stands he at-the
Thor
gate [*door*]
Und sieht das Kreuz schon erhöhet[em],
And sees the cross already [*soon*] reared,

[ee] gebrochen: from brechen (see L. of Ch. 9, *a*); here the Auxiliary hat *has*, is understood.

[ef] Pflicht: see L. of Ch. 12; and 8; and 9, *b*.

[eg] schlachten: from schlagen:—

From		Comes the STRENGTHENED Verb	
schlagen [*slay*]	strike	schlachten	to *slaughter*, to butcher.
tragen [*draw*]	carry	trachten	to *treat*, *try* or strive for.
fliehen	*flee*	sich flüchten	take *flight*, escape.
ziehen [*tow*]	pull	zücken	*tug*, *twitch*, shrug.
biegen	to *bow*, bend	bücken	stoop.
hängen	*hang*	henken	*hang* (a criminal).
hören	*hear*	horchen	*hearken*, *hark*.
stehen	*stand*	steigen	mount, climb.

N.B.—These Strengthened Verbs are mostly Regular.

[eh] Opfer: from the Lat. *ob-ferre* to offer, whence *offering*, *offertory*, etc.—In German, as in English, most words referring to Religious Rites were introduced from the Latin by the Romish Church; as, Pilgrim, Kloster, Priester, etc.

[ei] zweie: from zwei; see L. of Ch. 4, *a*, and 18, *b*.

[ej] Liebe: see L. of Ch. 18, *c*, and 14.

[ek] Treue: see note [b] to "Ritter Toggenburg"; and L. of Aff. 2.

[el] geht and unter: from untergehen (see L. of Pr. 36); when said of mortals, it means "to perish," but of the heavenly bodies "to set."

[em] erhöhen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

Daß die Menge gaffend[eu] umstehet[eo];
Which the multitude gaping surrounds;
An dem Seile schon zieht[ep] man den Freund empor[ep],
On the rope already draw they his friend aloft,
Da zertrennt[eq] er gewaltig[cd] den dichten[er]
There divides he forcibly the thick
Chor:
crowd [*choir*]:
„Mich, Henker[es]," ruft er, „erwürget[s]!
"Me, hangmen," cries he, "slaughter!
Da bin ich, für den er gebürget[et]."
Here am I, for whom he stood-surety."

Und Erstaunen[eu] ergreift[ev] das Volk umher;
And astonishment seizes the people [*folk*] around;
In den Armen liegen sich Beide[ew],
In the arms lie to-each-other [*both*] the-Two,
Und weinen vor Schmerzen[fe] und Freude[ex].
And weep for sorrow [*smart*] and joy.
Da sieht man kein Auge thränenleer[ey],
There sees one no eye void-of-tears,
Und zum Könige[u] bringt man die Wundermähr;
And to-the king brings one the wonderful-story;
Der fühlt ein menschliches[ez] Rühren,
He feels a humane touch,

[en] gaffen: see L. of Ch. 12.
[eo] umstehen: see L. of Pr. 8.
[ep] zieht and empor: from emporziehen; see L. of Pr. 20.
[eq] zertrennen: see L. of Pr. 11.
[er] dicht: see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 9, *a*.
[es] Henker: see L. of Aff. 4, *a*.—Henken from hängen, see notes [ay] and [eg].
[et] gebürget: (for gebürget hat has stood-surety), from bürgen to be surety; see note [aa] to "Der Pilgrim."
[eu] Erstaunen: see note [q] to "Der Sänger," and L. of Pr. 4, *b*.
[ev] ergreifen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.—For greifen, see L. of Ch. 12.
[ew] In —— Beide: "The Two lie *in the arms to each other*;" means "The Two (friends) are clasped *in one another's arms*"; see note [cl].
[ex] Freude: see note [bg] to "Ritter Toggenburg."
[ey] thränenleer: from Thräne a tear, and leer empty.
[ez] menschlich: see L. of Aff. 13, *a*; and note [j] to "Des Esels Trost."

Läßt[fa] schnell vor den Thron sie führen[fa]—
Lets quickly before the throne them be-brought—

Und blickt[fb] sie lange verwundernd[fc] an[fb];
And looks-at them a-long-while wondering —;
Drauf spricht er: „Es ist euch gelungen[fd],
Thereupon speaks he: "It has [*is*] to-you prospered,
Ihr habt das Herz[fe] mir bezwungen[ff],
Ye have the heart to-me subdued,
Und die Treue sie ist doch[fg] kein leerer
And — Faithfulness [*truth*] it is after-all no empty
Wahn,
delusion,
So nehmet[fh] auch[fi] mich zum Genossen[fj] an[fh];
So accept also me for a partner —;
Ich-sei, (gewährt[fk] mir die Bitte),
Be-I, (grant me the request),
In eurem Bunde der Dritte[fl]."
In your league [*band*] the Third." SCHILLER.

[fa] Läßt sie führen: "lets them lead"; that is, "causes (some one) to lead them"; so the French *faire conduire*, etc.—For führen, see note [q] to "Der Erlkönig."

[fb] blickt and an: from anblicken; see L. of Pr. 13.

[fc] verwundern: see L. of Pr. 10, *c*.

[fd] Es ist euch gelungen: means "Ye have succeeded."—Gelungen, from gelingen; see L. of Pr. 5.

[fe] Herz and Schmerz: see L. of Ch. 17, and 4, *a*. "The heart to me," means "my heart"; see note [cl].

[ff] bezwungen: from bezwingen; see L. of Pr. 1.—For zwingen, see L. of Ch. 4, *a*, and 8: whence Zwinger a fortified prison, also a cage for wild beasts on the arena of an amphitheatre.

[fg] doch: see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 9, *b*.

[fh] nehmet and an: from annehmen; see L. of Pr. 13.—Compare the Lat. *ac-cip* (English *accept*), from *ad* to, and *cap* take.

[fi] auch: see L. of Ch. 16, *b*, and 9, *a*.

[fj] Genoß: fellow; Eid *oath* (see L. of Ch. 18, *b*, and 1, *a*); whence Eidgenoß [*oath-fellow*], a word which has become famous as corrupted into "Huguenots," the old Protestants in France.

[fk] gewähren: see L. of Pr. 5.

[fl] Ich sei ——— der Dritte: the two lines mean, "Do grant me my request, let me be the Third in your fellowship."—Dritte: from drei *three*; so zweite second, from zwei *two*; vierte *fourth*, etc.

Der Handschuh.
THE GLOVE [*hand-shoe*].

Vor seinem Löwengarten[a],
Before his menagerie [*lion-garden*],
Das Kampfspiel[b] zu erwarten[c],
The combat to await,
Saß König Franz,
Sat king Francis,
Und um ihn die Großen[d] der Krone,
And about him the grandees of-the crown,
Und rings[e] auf hohem Balkone
And around on (the) high balcony
Die Damen[f] in schönem Kranz.
The Ladies in beautiful circle.

Und wie er winkt mit dem Finger
And (as soon) as he beckons [*winks*] with the finger
Auf[g] thut[g] sich der weite Zwinger[h],
Opens itself the wide cage,
Und hinein[i], mit bedächtigem[j] Schritt,
And in, with sober stride,
Ein Löwe tritt[i];
A Lion steps [*treads*];

---

[a] Löwengarten: from Löwe *lion*, and Garten *garden*; hence Zoological Gardens, Menagerie.

[b] Kampfspiel: from Kampf [*camp*, *champion*, etc.] fight, and Spiel play, game; hence Kampfspiel a game at fighting.

[c] erwarten: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*; and note [dx] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[d] Großen: *great* (*ones*), from groß; see L. of Ch. 16, *c*, and 4, *b*.

[e] rings: [*ringwise*] all round; from Ring a *ring*.

[f] Damen: see note [l] to "Der Sänger."

[g] auf and thut: from aufthun; see note [ag] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[h] Zwinger: see note [ff] to "Die Bürgschaft."— Schiller, in his *William Tell*, uses both Zwing and Twing for a fort; so that, even in German, Z may change into T.

[i] hinein and tritt: from hineintreten; see L. of Pr. 28, and Diagram, page 61.

[j] Bedächtig: (from denken, L. of Ch. 9, *b*); see L. of Aff. 11.

Und sieht sich[k] stumm
And looks about him dumbly
Rings· um[k],
Around —,
Mit langem Gähnen[l],
With (a) long [L. of Ch. 15] yawn,
Und schüttelt[m] die Mähnen,
And shakes his mane,
Und strecket[v] die Glieder,
And stretches his limbs,
Und legt[n] sich nieder[n].
And lays himself down.

Und der König winkt wieder—
And the king beckons again—
Da öffnet[o] sich behend [L. of Pr. 46]
There opens (itself) swiftly [*handily*]
Ein zweites[p] Thor;
A second gate [*door*];
Daraus[q] rennt[r]
Out-of-it [*there-out*] runs
Mit wildem Sprunge
With wild spring
Ein Tiger hervor[r].
A Tiger forth.
Wie der den Löwen erschaut[s],
(As soon) as he the Lion beholds,
Brüllt er laut,
Roars [*brools*] he loud,

---

[k] sieht sich and um: go together, from (sich) umsehen; see L. of Pr. 35.

[l] Gähnen: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*.

[m] schütteln: see L. of Aff. 17, *a*.

[n] legt and nieder: from niederlegen; see L. of Pr. 33; and note [ay] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[o] öffnet: from offen *open* (see L. of Ch. 12; and note [as] to "Ritter Toggenburg"); öffnen *to open*.

[p] zweite: see note [n] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[q] daraus: from dar (see L. of Ch. 1, *a*), and aus, see L. of Ch. 4, *b*.

[r] rennt and hervor: from hervorrennen; see L. of Pr. 26.

[s] erschauen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

Schlägt[t] mit dem Schweif
Strikes with his tail [*sweep*]
Einen furchtbaren[u] Reif,
A dreadful ring,
Und reckt[v] die Zunge[w],
And reaches-out his tongue,
Und im Kreise scheu
And in-a [*in-the*] circle warily [*shy*]
Umgeht[x]-er den Leu[y],
He-walks-round the Lion,
Grimmig[z] schnurrend [see L. of Ch. 6, *c*];
Grimly snarling;
Drauf[aa] streckt[ab] er sich murrend
Thereupon stretches he himself growling [*murmuring, muttering*]
Zur[ac] Seite nieder[ab].
At-his side down.

Und der König winkt wieder—
And the king beckons again—
Da speit[ad] das doppelt[ae] geöffnete[af]
There throws [*spues, spits*] the doubly opened
Haus
house

---

[t] schlagen: see note [e] to "Der junge Hase."
[u] furchtbar: see L. of Aff. 7, *a*.
[v] strecken and recken: see L. of Ch. 8.
[w] Zunge: see L. of Ch. 4, *a*.
[x] umgehen: see L. of Pr. 8.—For gehen, see L. of Ch. 18, *a*.
[y] Leu: old and poetic for Löwe.
[z] grimmig: see L. of Aff. 11.
[aa] drauf: contr. from darauf.
[ab] streckt and nieder: from niederstrecken; see L. of Pr. 33.
[ac] zur: contr. from zu der *to the*; see note [k] to "Ritter Toggenburg."
[ad] speit and aus: from ausspeien; see L. of Pr. 15, *a*.
[ae] doppelt: see L. of Ch. 13, and 3.—From the Lat. *duo* two, and *plic* fold, comes *duplic* twofold; whence *duplicate, duplicity*, doppelt, and *double*.
[af] geöffnet: Past Participle of öffnen; see note [o].

Zwei Leoparden auf Einmal[ag] aus[ad].
Two Leopards at once out.
Die stürzen mit muthiger[ah] Kampfbegier[ai]
These fall with bold combativeness
Auf das Tigerthier[aj];
Upon the Tiger-beast;
Das packt sie mit seinen grimmigen[x] Tatzen,
That clutches them with his grim paws,
Und der Leu[y] mit Gebrüll[ak]
And the Lion with (a) roar
Richtet[al] sich auf[al],— da wird's[am] still;
Raises himself up,— then grows it still;
Und herum im Kreis,
And around in-a circle,
Von Mordsucht[an] heiß[ao],
With bloodthirstiness [*murder-sickness*] hot,
Lagern sich[ap] die gräulichen[aq] Katzen [L. of Ch. 4, *a*].
Couch themselves the grizzly cats.

[ag] auf Einmal: [*upon one-time*], see note [au] to "Der Pilgrim."

[ah] muthig: see L. of Aff. 11.

[ai] Kampfbegier: (from Kampf fight, and Begier desire), "desire of fighting."—Begier from begehren, see L. of Pr. 1.—The root gehr is conn. with the Lat. *quær*, *quir*, whence *require*, *inquire*, etc.

[aj] Tigerthier: for Thier, see note [s] to "Mignon."

[ak] Gebrüll: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

[al] richtet and auf: from aufrichten; see L. of Pr. 14, *a*.

[am] wird's: contr. from wird es; see note [n] to "Des Esels Trost."

[an] Mordsucht: from Mord *murder*, and Sucht *sickness*. So, Heimsucht *home-sickness*; Ehrsucht [honour-sickness] ambition; Eifersucht [zeal-sickness] jealousy; Lungensucht disease of the lungs, consumption.—Sucht comes from siech; see L. of Ch. 9, *a*.

[ao] heiß: see L. of Ch. 18, *b*, and 4, *b*.

[ap] lagern sich and herum: go together, from (sich) herumlagern; see L. of Pr. 25. From liegen (see L. of Ch. 10, *b*) comes also Lager *leaguer;* whence belagern *to beleaguer* or besiege.

[aq] gräulich: see L. of Aff. 13, *a* and *b*.—Here it does not refer to the colour, but means "horrid."

Da fällt[ar] von des Altans[as] Rand[at]
There falls-in from the gallery's edge
Ein Handschuh von schöner Hand
A Glove from (a) fair hand
Zwischen[au] den Tiger und den Leun[av]
Betwixt the Tiger and the Lion
Mitten[aw] hinein[ar].
In-the-middle ——.

Und zu Ritter[ax] Delorges, spottender Weis',
And to knight Delorges, (in) mocking wise,
Wendet[ay] sich Fräulein[az] Kunigund:
Turns (herself) Lady Cunigunda:
„Herr Ritter, ist Eure Lieb' so heiß[ao],
"Sir knight, is your love so hot,
Wie Ihr mir's[ba] schwört zu jeder Stund',
As you to-me swear (at) every hour,
Ei, so hebt[bb] mir den Handschuh auf[bb]"!
Oh, then [*so*] pick me the Glove up!"

Und der Ritter,[ax] in schnellem Lauf,[bc]
And the knight, in swift race,
Steigt hinab[bd] in den furchtbar'n[u] Zwinger[h]
Descends into the fearful arena

[ar] fällt and hinein: from hineinfallen; see L. of Pr. 28; and Diagram, page 61.

[as] Altan: elevated place, from the Lat. *altus* high; whence the Lat. *altare*, Altar an altar, that is, an elevated table for the gods; also, *altitude*, *exalt*, etc.

[at] Rand: see L. of Ch. 3.

[au] zwischen: (see L. of Ch. 7), from zwei *two*, hence *be-tween*, that is, *by-the-twain*.

[av] Leun: the Accusative case of Leu; see note [y].

[aw] mitten: from Mitte; see L. of Ch. 2.

[ax] Ritter: see note [a] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[ay] wenden: see note [ay] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[az] Fräulein: see L. of Aff. 1.

[ba] mir's: contr. from mir es *to-me it*.

[bb] hebt and auf: from aufheben; see L. of Pr. 14, *a*.

[bc] Lauf: see note [dj] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[bd] steigt and hinab: from hinabsteigen; see L. of Pr. 28; and Diagram, page 61. So, *descend*, from the Lat. *de* down, and *scand* climb.

Mit festem Schritte,
With firm [*fast, steadfast*] step [*stride*],
Und aus der Ungeheuer Mitte[be]
And out-of the monsters' midst
Nimmt er den Handschuh mit keckem Finger.
Takes he the Glove with hardy finger.

Und mit Erstaunen[bf] und mit Grauen[bg]
And with astonishment and with horror
Sehen's die Ritter[ax] und Edelfrauen[bh];
See it the knights and noble-ladies;
Und gelassen[bi] bringt[bj] er den Handschuh zurück[bj].
And calmly brings he the Glove back.
Da schallt ihm sein Lob aus jedem Munde;
Then sounds to-him his praise out-of every mouth;
Aber mit zärtlichem Liebesblick,
But with tender look-of-love,
Er verheißt[bk] ihm sein nahes Glück,
It promises to-him his approaching [*nigh*] bliss [*luck*],
Empfängt[bl] ihn Fräulein Kunigunde.
Receives him Lady Cunigunda.

[be] aus der Ungeheuer Mitte: "from the midst of the monsters."—For Ungeheuer, see L. of Pr. 48.

[bf] Erstaunen: see note [q] to "Der Sänger"; and L. of Pr. 4, *b*.

[bg] Grauen: compare note [aq].

[bh] Edelfrau: from edel noble (see L. of Ch. 1, *a*), and Frau lady; so, Edelmann nobleman; der Adel the nobility, etc.

[bi] gelassen: Past Participle of lassen to *let;* hence it means, "*let loose*, free, unembarrassed."

[bj] bringt and zurück: from zurückbringen; see L. of Pr. 42.

[bk] verheißen: see L. of Pr. 10, *a.*—Heißen is conn. with *hight, hest, behest*, etc.:—

Wie das Gestirn,	"Like as a Star,
Ohne Hast,	"That maketh not haste,
Aber ohne Rast,	"That taketh not rest,
Drehe sich jeder	"Be each one fulfilling
Um die eigene Last!	"His God-given *hest!*"
GOETHE,	translated by T. CARLYLE.

[bl] empfangen: from fangen to catch, to lay hold of; conn. with *fang* and *finger*.

Und er wirft[bm] ihr[bn] den Handschuh in's Gesicht[bn]:
And he throws her the Glove in the face:
„Den Dank, Dame, begehr'[al] ich nicht!"—
"Such thanks, Lady, require I not!"—
Und verläßt[bo] sie zur selben Stunde.
And forsakes her at-the self-same hour.

SCHILLER.

[bm] wirft: from werfen; see L. of Ch. 17, and 12.

[bn] ihr in's Gesicht: "to-her in the face"; see note [cl] to "Die Bürgschaft".—For Gesicht, see note [f] to "Der Erlkönig."

[bo] verlassen: see L. of Pr. 10, *a*.

N.B.—The next two poems are to be prepared by help of the Translations on the opposite page, and of the Foot-notes. When read off to the Teacher, it is intended that the Translation should be kept *covered.*

Das Glück von Edenhall.

Von Edenhall der junge Lord,
Läßt schmettern[a] Festtrommetenschall,
Er hebt sich an des Tisches Bord
Und ruft in trunkner Gäste Schwall[b]:
„Nun her mit dem Glück von Edenhall!"

Der Schenk vernimmt[c] ungern[d] den Spruch,
Des Hauses ältester Vasall,
Nimmt zögernd[e] aus dem seidenen[f] Tuch
Das hohe Trinkglas von Krystall,
Sie nennen's: „Das Glück von Edenhall."

Drauf der Lord: „Dem Glas zum Preis
Schenkt's[g] rothen ein[g] aus Portugall!"
Mit Händezittern gießt [L. of Ch. 18, *c*] der Greis;
Und purpurn Licht wird[h] überall,
Es strahlt aus dem Glücke von Edenhall.

Da spricht der Lord und schwingt's dabei [*thereby*, meanwhile]:
„Dies Glas von leuchtendem Krystall
Gab meinem Ahn am Quell die Fei [*fay*, *fairy*];
Drein schrieb sie: Kommt dies Glas zu Fall,
Fahr wohl dann, o Glück von Edenhall!

---

[a] schmettern: see note [a] to "Der Schmetterling und die Biene."
[b] trunkner Gäste Schwall: see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—Schwall: swarm, throng; from schwellen to *swell*.
[c] vernehmen: see note [n] to "Das Schloß am Meere."
[d] ungern: see L. of Pr. 48.

THE LUCK OF EDENHALL.

Of Edenhall the youthful lord,
Bids sound the festal trumpet's call,
He rises at the banquet board,
And cries 'mid the drunken revellers all,
"Now bring me the Luck of Edenhall!"

The Butler hears the words with pain,
The house's oldest seneschal,
Takes slow from its silken cloth again
The drinking-glass of crystal tall;
They call it The Luck of Edenhall.

Then said the Lord; "This glass to praise,
Fill with red wine from Portugal!"
The greybeard with trembling hand obeys;
A purple light shines over all,
It beams from the Luck of Edenhall.

Then speaks the lord, and waves it light;
"This glass of flashing crystal tall
Gave to my sire the Fountain-Sprite;
She wrote in it: *If this glass doth fall*
Fare well, then, oh Luck of Edenhall!

---

[e] zögern: see L. of Aff. 17, *a*; and Etymological Tree.

[f] seiden: see L. of Aff. 8.

[g] einschenken and einstürmen: see L. of Pr. 19, *a*.

[h] werden: see note [a] to "Des Esels Trost."

„Ein Kelchglas ward zum Loos mit Fug[i],
Dem freud'gen Stamm von Edenhall;
Wir schlürfen gern in vollem Zug[j],
Wir läuten gern mit lautem [*loud*] Schall [L. of Ch. 7];
Stoßt[k] an[k] mit dem Glück von Edenhall.„

Erst klingt es milde, tief und voll,
Gleich dem Gesang[l] der Nachtigall,
Dann wie des Waldstroms laut Geroll[l],
Zuletzt erdröhnt[m] wie Donnerhall[n]
Das herrliche Glück von Edenhall.

„Zum Horte nimmt ein kühn [*keen*] Geschlecht
Sich den zerbrechlichen Krystall;
Es dauert [en-*dures*] länger schon als recht.;
Stoßt an! Mit diesem kräftigen[o] Prall
Versuch'[p] ich das Glück von Edenhall."

Und als das Trinkglas gellend springt,
Springt das Gewölb'[l] mit jähem Knall,
Und aus dem Riß die Flamme dringt;
Die Gäste sind zerstoben[q] all
Mit dem brechenden Glücke von Edenhall.

Ein[s] stürmt[s] der Feind mit Brand und Mord,
Der in der Nacht erstieg[r] den Wall,
Vom Schwerte fällt der junge Lord,

---

[i] Ein —— Fug: literally, "A goblet became the lot with justice." —Kelch: conn. with the Lat. *calix*, and our *chalice*; see note [ch] to "Die Bürgschaft."—Zum: see note [se] to "Die Bürgschaft."—Loos: see L. of Ch. 4, *b*.—Fug: right, authority; conn. with the Lat. *fung-* to bear or discharge an office, whence our *function*, *defunct*, etc.

[j] Zug: drawing or draught; see Etymological Tree.

[k] anstoßen: see L. of Pr. 13.

[l] Gesang, Geroll, Gewölbe: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

"'T was right a goblet the Fate should be
Of the joyous race of Edenhall!
Deep draughts drink we right willingly;
And willingly ring with merry call,
Kling! klang! to the Luck of Edenhall!"

First rings it deep, and full, and mild,
Like to the song of nightingale;
Then like the roar of a torrent wild;
Then mutters at last like thunder's fall,
The glorious Luck of Edenhall.

"For its keeper takes a race of might
The fragile goblet of crystal tall;
It has lasted longer than is right;
Kling! klang! With a harder blow than all
Will I try the Luck of Edenhall."

As the goblet ringing flies apart,
Suddenly cracks the vaulted hall;
And through the rift the wild flames start;
The guests in dust are scattered all,
With the breaking Luck of Edenhall.

In storms the foe, with fire and sword,
He in the night had scaled the wall;
Slain by the sword lies the youthful lord

---

[m] erdröhnen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[n] Donner: see L. of Ch. 1, *a*, and 3.—Hall: conn. with *halloo*, etc.

[o] kräftig: from Kraft strength; see L. of Aff. 11.

[p] versuchen: to try, tempt; from suchen *seek*.

[q] zerstieben, zerspringen, zerstören: see L. of Pr. 11.

[r] ersteigen: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.—For steigen, see note [ss] to "Die Bürgschaft."

Hält in der Hand noch den Krystall,
Das zersprungene[q] Glück von Edenhall.

Am Morgen irrt der Schenk[s] allein,
Der Greis in der zerstörten[q] Hall',
Er sucht des Herrn verbrannt Gebein[t];
Er sucht im grausen[u] Trümmerfall
Die Scherben des Glücks von Edenhall.

„Die Steinwand," spricht er, „springt zu Stück,
Die hohe Säule muß zu Fall;
Glas ist der Erde Stolz und Glück,
In Splitter fällt der Erdenball
Einst[v] gleich dem Glücke von Edenhall."

L. Uhland.

---

[s] Schenk: [*skinker*], from schenken to pour out.
[t] Gebein: see L. of Pr. 43, *a*.
[u] graus: see note bg to "Der Handschuh."

But holds in his hand the crystal tall,
The shattered Luck of Edenhall.

On the morrow gropes the Butler alone,
The graybeard, in the desert hall,
He seeks his Lord's burnt skeleton,
He seeks in the dismal ruin's fall
The shards of the Luck of Edenhall.

"The stone-wall," saith he, "doth fall aside,
Down must the stately column fall;
Glass is this earth's Luck and Pride,
In atoms shall fall this earthly ball,
One day like the Luck of Edenhall!"

H. W. LONGFELLOW.

---

[v] einſt: (from ein *one*), see L. of Ch. 3.—So, even some English people say *wonst.*

Der Ring des Polykrates.[a]

Ballade.

Er stand auf seines Daches Zinnen,
Er schaute[b] mit vergnügten[c] Sinnen
Auf das beherrschte[d] Samos hin[b].
„Dieß Alles ist mir unterthänig[e],"
Begann er zu Aegyptens König,
„Gestehe[f], daß ich glücklich bin."—

„Du hast der Götter Gunst[g] erfahren[h]!
Die vormals[i] deines Gleichen waren,
Sie zwingt jetzt deines Scepters Macht.
Doch einer lebt noch, sie zu rächen [*wreak*]:
Dich kann mein Mund nicht glücklich sprechen
So lang des Feindes Auge[j] wacht."

Und eh' der König noch geendet,
Da stellt[k] sich, von Milet gesendet,
Ein Bote dem Tyrannen[l] dar[k]:
„Laß, Herr, des Opfers[m] Düfte steigen,
Und mit des Lorbeers[n] muntern Zweigen
Bekränze[d] dir dein festlich Haar!"

---

[a] Poly'crătes, tyrant or prince of the isle of Samos, was one of the ablest rulers of his time. He had a hundred ships of war, the largest navy then in the world; and, secure in his island home, held out for many years against the overwhelming power of Persia. He had for his ally Amasis, king of Egypt, who however renounced his alliance, as related in this Poem; and Polycrates was soon after entrapped by the Persian satrap Orœtes, and crucified, B.C. 522.

The Greeks had a strong conviction that the gods would allow no man to be perfectly happy. Out of this conviction, perhaps, arose the story told by Herodotus, which Schiller has poetized.— *We* say, 'Tis hard to carry a full cup without spilling.

[b] hinschauen: see L. of Pr. 27.

[c] vergnügt: gratified; from vergnügen, see L. of Pr. 10, *c*.

THE RING OF POLYCRATES.

A Ballad.

On his roof's battlements he stood,
He cast his eyes in happy mood
On Samos subject to his sway.
"All this, and more, obeys my hest"
Said he to Egypt's King, his guest:
"Confess I'm happy every way."

"The Gods have blest thee more and more!
And those who were thy peers before,
Now own thy sceptre's might the stronger.
Yet one there lives to venge them still;
I may not call thee blest, until
The foeman's eye shall wake no longer."

And ere the King his speech could end,
A courier bent before his Friend,
Sent from Milete, where waged the quarrel:
"Let smoke of offerings rise around,
And let thy festive locks be crown'd
With joyous leaves of the gay laurel!

---

[d] beherrschen, bekränzen, etc.: see L. of Pr. 1.

[e] unterthänig: see L. of Aff. 11.

[f] gestehen, gewähren: L. of Pr. 5.

[g] der Götter Gunst: see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—For Gunst, see note [ad] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[h] erfahren, etc.: see L. of Pr. 4, *a*.

[i] vormals: *afore-time*; see note [an] to "Der Pilgrim."

[j] Auge: see L. of Ch. 16, *b*, and 10, *b*.

[k] darstellen: see L. of Pr. 17.

[l] Tyrann: see notes [b] & [j] to "Die Bürgschaft.."—Now, Polycrates was a *tyrannos*, but not a Wütherich.

[m] Opfer: see note [eh] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[n] Lorbeer: see notes [e] and [s] to "Mignon."

„Getroffen sank dein Feind vom Speere;
Mich sendet mit der frohen Mähre
Dein treuer Feldherr Polydor"—
Und nimmt[o] aus einem schwarzen Becken,
Noch blutig, zu der Beiden Schrecken[p],
Ein wohlbekanntes Haupt hervor[o].

Der König tritt[q] zurück[q] mit Grauen.
„Doch warn' ich dich, dem Glück zu trauen,"
Versetzt[r] er mit besorgtem[s] Blick.
„Bedenk',[d] auf ungetreuen[t] Wellen—
Wie leicht kann sie der Sturm zerschellen[u]—
Schwimmt deiner Flotte zweifelnd[v] Glück."

Und eh' er noch das Wort gesprochen,
Hat ihn der Jubel unterbrochen,[w]
Der von der Rhede[x] jauchzend schallt [L. of Ch. 7].
Mit fremden Schätzen reich beladen[d],
Kehrt zu den heimischen Gestaden[y]
Der Schiffe mastenreicher [*rich-in-masts*] Wald.

Der königliche Gast erstaunet:
„Dein Glück ist heute [Lat. *hodie*] gut gelaunet,[z]
Doch fürchte seinen Unbestand.[aa]
Der Kreter waffenkund'ge[ab] Schaaren
Bedräuen[d] dich mit Kriegsgefahren;[ac]
Schon nahe sind sie diesem Strand."

---

[o] hervornehmen: see L. of Pr. 26.
[p] Schrecken: conn. with *shriek, screech, scare*, etc.; see L. of Ch. 7.
[q] zurücktreten: see L. of Pr. 42.
[r] versetzen: see L. of Pr. 10, *c*.
[s] Sorge: see L. of Ch. 10, *b*; besorgt care-stricken, anxious.
[t] ungetreu: see L. of Pr. 48, and 47.
[u] zerschellen, etc.: see L. of Pr. 11.
[v] zwei: *two*, see L. of Ch. 4, *a*, and 18, *b*; zweifeln to be "in a

"Spear-smitten fell thy foe before us;
Thy trusty captain Polydorus
Hath sent me with the joyous story."
And to the terror of them Both,
From a black charger, nothing loth,
He draws a well-known Head, still gory.

The King steps backward horror-struck:
"I warn thee yet, mistrust thy Luck!"
Replies he with forecasting glances:
"Bethink thee, on the faithless tides
Thy fleet's yet doubtful fortune rides,
An easy prey to weather's chances."

And on the warning words he spoke
A cry of exultation broke,
Up from the roads in triumph roaring;
For, laden rich with foreign stores,
Turn homeward to their native shores
Forests of shipmasts, safely mooring.

The kingly Guest stood in dismay:
"Although thy Fortune smile to-day,
Her fickleness thou shouldst be fearing.
The hosts of Cretans good at arms
Threaten thy land with war's alarms;
This coast they are already nearing."

---

strait betwixt two," to doubt.—So, from the Lat. *duo* two, come *dubitare*, to *doubt*; *dubious*, *indubitable*, etc.

[w] unterbrechen: see L. of Pr. 9.

[x] Rhede: see L. of Ch. 18, *a*.

[y] Gestade, Geschenk: see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

[z] Laune: mood, humour; gut gelaunet in a good humour.

[aa] Unbestand: see L. of Pr. 45.

[ab] kennen: to *know*; Kunde *cunning*, as in "Let my right hand forget her cunning"—(Ps. cxxxvii. 5); kundig, see L. of Aff. 11.

[ac] Krieg: war; conn. with kriegen to get hold of; kratzen to *scratch*; Krebs *crab*, *craw*; greifen to *gripe* or *grab*, &c.—Gefahr, see L. of Pr. 43, *b*.

Und eh' ihm noch das Wort entfallen,[ad]
Da sieht man's von den Schiffen wallen,
Und tausend Stimmen rufen: „Sieg!
Von Feindesnoth sind wir befreiet,[d]
Die Kreter hat der Sturm zerstreuet,[u]
Vorbei, geendet ist der Krieg."

Das hört der Gastfreund mit Entsetzen.[ad]
„Fürwahr, ich muß dich glücklich schätzen!
Doch," spricht er, „zittr' ich für dein Heil[ae]:
Mir grauet vor der Götter Neide[af];
Des Lebens ungemischte[ag] Freude
Ward keinem Irdischen zu Theil [*deal*][ah].

„Auch mir ist Alles wohl gerathen,
Bei allen meinen Herrscherthaten
Begleitet mich des Himmels Huld;
Doch hatt' ich einen theuren [*dear*] Erben,
Den nahm mir Gott, ich sah ihn sterben,
Dem Glück bezahlt'[d] ich meine Schuld[ai].

„Drum, willst du dich vor Leid bewahren,[d]
So flehe zu den Unsichtbaren,[aj]
Daß sie zum Glück den Schmerz verleihn.[ak]
Noch Keinen sah ich fröhlich enden,
Auf den mit immer vollen Händen
Die Götter ihre Gaben streun.

[ad] entfallen, entsetzen: see L. of Pr. 3, *a*.—Entsetzen is here a Noun.

[ae] Heil: safety; see note [n] to "Ritter Toggenburg."

[af] der Götter Neide: see note [ak] to "Der Pilgrim."—Neid comes from the Lat. *in-vid*, look-in, pry, *envy*. V and U being but one letter (see *N.B.*, page 26), *invid* became by degrees Inuid, Nuid, Neid. From *invidia* we get *invidious*, *envious*, *unenviable*, etc.

And ere the word had left his lips,
A throng was billowing from the ships:
"Victory!" from thousand throats ascended:
"From fear of foes are we deliver'd,
The Cretan ships the storm has shiver'd,
The war is past, the war is ended."

This with amazement hears the Guest:
"In truth I must esteem thee blest;
Yet do I tremble for thy sake:
I dread the jealousy of Heaven;
Never to earthly man was given
Unmingled pleasure to partake.

"I too have known prosperity,
In all my deeds of sovereignty
Heaven's grace hath lent me willing aid;
Yet one beloved heir had I,
Whom God removed—I saw him die;
My debt to Fortune I have paid.

"Then, wouldst thou guard thyself from ill,
So pray the Immortals that they will
Add Sorrow to thy Fortune's dower.
I ne'er saw one have blessed end
On whom the Gods their gifts did send
From full hands in unbroken shower.

[ag] ungemischt; see L. of Pr. 48.—For mischen, see L. of Ch. 7.

[ah] ward —— Theil: "became to no earthly (man) for (a) portion"; see note [ae] to "Die Bürgschaft."

[ai] Schuld: see note [f] on page 128.

[aj] unsichtbar: from Sicht, see L. of Ch. 9, *b*; sichtbar, see L. of Aff. 7, *b*; unsichtbar, see L. of Pr. 48.

[ak] verleihen, verzeihen: see L. of Pr. 10, *a*.

„Und wenn's die Götter nicht gewähren,[f]
So acht' [*heed*] auf eines Freundes Lehren
Und rufe[al] selbst das Unglück her,[al]
Und was von allen deinen Schätzen
Dein Herz am Höchsten mag ergötzen,[h]
Das nimm und wirf's in dieses Meer!"

Und Jener spricht, von Furcht beweget[d]:
„Von Allem, was die Insel heget,
Ist dieser Ring mein höchstes Gut.
Ihn will ich den Erinnen[am] weihen,
Ob sie mein Glück mir dann verzeihen,"[ak]
Und wirft das Kleinod in die Fluth.

Und bei des nächsten Morgens Lichte—
Da tritt mit fröhlichem Gesichte
Ein Fischer vor den Fürsten hin:
„Herr, diesen Fisch hab' ich gefangen,
Wie keiner noch ins Netz gegangen;
Dir zum Geschenke[y] bring' ich ihn."

Und als der Koch den Fisch zertheilet,[u]
Kommt er bestürzt[d] herbeigeeilet[an]
Und ruft mit hocherstauntem Blick:
„Sieh', Herr, den Ring, den du getragen [*draw*, car-
Ihn fand ich in des Fisches Magen; [ry, wear],
O, ohne Gränzen ist dein Glück!"

Hier wendet[ao] sich der Gast mit Grausen:
„So kann ich hier nicht ferner hausen,

[al] herrufen: see L. of Pr. 24; and Diagram, page 61.
[am] Erinnen: *Erinnyes*, a Greek name for the three Furies, or avenging deities.

"And if the Gods will not be kind,
Hear from a faithful friend his mind,
And woo Mischance to come to thee;
Whatever thing in all thy treasure
Yields to thy heart the highest pleasure,
That take, and fling it in the sea!"

Then spake the Other, moved with fear:
"Of all that this isle holdeth dear,
This Ring is my most precious good;
This to the Furies I'll devote,
If they 'll forgive my happy lot"—
And flings the jewel in the flood.

And when the morrow's light began,
Comes to the Prince a fisherman
With joyous face: "My lord, I've caught thee
This fish, such as did never yet
Come into mortal fisher's net;
This for a present I have brought thee."

The fish was opened by the cook,
But presently with wilder'd look
He rushes in, and cries astounded:
"Such miracle I never saw!
Thy Ring I found i' th' fish's maw;
O Prince, thy fortune is unbounded!"

The Guest in horror turns away:
"With thee I may not longer stay,

---

[28] herbeieilen: to hasten to (one's) side; see L. of Pr, 16 and 28.
[29] wenden: see note [27] to "Die Bürgschaft."

Mein Freund kannst du nicht weiter sein.
Die Götter wollen dein Verderben[ap]:
Fort[aq] eil'[aq] ich, nicht mit dir zu sterben."
Und sprach's, und schiffte[ar] schnell sich ein.[ar]

SCHILLER.

[ap] verderben: see L. of Pr. 10, *a*. Here it is a Noun.
[aq] forteilen: see L. of Pr. 22, *a*.

My friend canst thou no further be;
The Gods are bent on thy undoing;
I will begone, nor share thy ruin."
He spake, and swiftly put to sea.

J. S. S.

[ar] einschiffen: see L. of Pr. 19, *a*.

PART IV.

Der Erlkönig.

Wer reitet so spät durch Nacht und Wind?
Es ist der Vater mit seinem Kind;
Er hat den Knaben wohl in dem Arm,
Er faßt ihn sicher, er hält ihn warm.

„Mein Sohn, was birgst du so bang dein Gesicht?"
Siehst, Vater, du den Erlkönig nicht?
Den Erlkönig mit Kron' und Schweif?—
„Mein Sohn, es ist ein Nebelstreif."

„„Du liebes Kind, komm, geh mit mir!
Gar schöne Spiele spiel' ich mit dir;
Manch' bunte Blumen sind an dem Strand,
Meine Mutter hat manch' gülden Gewand.""

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und hörest du nicht,
Was Erlenkönig mir leise verspricht?
„Sei ruhig, bleibe ruhig, mein Kind,
In dürren Blättern säuselt der Wind."

„„Willst, feiner Knabe, du mit mir gehn?
Meine Töchter sollen dich warten schön;
Meine Töchter führen den nächtlichen Reihn,
Und wiegen und tanzen und singen dich ein.""

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und siehst du nicht dort
Erlkönigs Töchter am düstern Ort?
„Mein Sohn, mein Sohn, ich seh' es genau,
Es scheinen die alten Weiden so grau."

„„„Ich liebe dich, mich reizt deine schöne Gestalt;
Und bist du nicht willig, so brauch' ich Gewalt.""
Mein Vater, mein Vater, jetzt faßt er mich an!
Erlkönig hat mir ein Leids gethan!—

Dem Vater grauset's, er reitet geschwind,
Er hält in den Armen das ächzende Kind,
Erreicht den Hof mit Müh und Noth;
In seinen Armen das Kind war todt.

Der Pilgrim.

Noch in meines Lebens Lenze
War ich, und ich wandert' aus,
Und der Jugend frohe Tänze
Ließ ich in des Vaters Haus.

All mein Erbtheil, meine Habe
Warf ich fröhlich glaubend hin,
Und am leichten Pilgerstabe
Zog ich fort mit Kindersinn.

Denn mich trieb ein mächtig Hoffen
Und ein dunkles Glaubenswort;
Wandle, rief's, der Weg ist offen,
Immer nach dem Aufgang fort.

Bis zu einer goldnen Pforten
Du gelangst, da gehst Du ein;
Denn das Irdische wird dorten
Himmlisch, unvergänglich sein.

Abend ward's und wurde Morgen,
Nimmer, nimmer stand ich still;
Aber immer blieb's verborgen,
Was ich suche, was ich will.

Berge lagen mir im Wege,
Ströme hemmten meinen Fuß;
Ueber Schlünde baut' ich Stege,
Brücken durch den wilden Fluß.

Und zu eines Stroms Gestaden
Kam ich, der nach Morgen floß;
Froh vertrauend seinem Faden,
Warf ich mich in seinen Schooß.

Hin zu einem großen Meere
Trieb mich seiner Wellen Spiel;
Vor mir liegt's in weiter Leere,
Näher bin ich nicht dem Ziel.

Ach, kein Steg will dahin führen!
Ach, der Himmel über mir
Will die Erde nie berühren,
Und das Dort ist niemals hier.

Das Schloß am Meere.

Hast du das Schloß gesehen,
Das hohe Schloß am Meer?
Golden und rosig wehen
Die Wolken drüber her.

Es möchte sich niederneigen
In die spiegelklare Fluth;
Es möchte streben und steigen
In der Abendwolken Gluth.

„Wohl hab' ich es gesehen,
Das hohe Schloß am Meer,
Und den Mond darüber stehen,
Und Nebel weit umher."

Der Wind und des Meeres Wallen
Gaben sie frischen Klang?
Vernahmst Du aus hohen Hallen
Saiten und Festgesang?

„Die Winde, die Wogen alle
Lagen in tiefer Ruh,
Einem Klagelied aus der Halle
Hört' ich mit Thränen zu."

Sahest Du oben gehen
Den König und sein Gemahl?
Der rothen Mäntel Wehen?
Der goldnen Kronen Strahl?

Führten sie nicht mit Wonne
Eine schöne Jungfrau dar,
Herrlich wie eine Sonne
Strahlend im goldnen Haar?

„Wohl sah ich die Eltern beide,
Ohne der Kronen Licht,
Im schwarzen Trauerkleide;
Die Jungfrau sah ich nicht."

Mignon.

Kennst Du das Land, wo die Citronen blüh'n,
Im dunkeln Laub die Gold=Orangen glüh'n,
Ein sanfter Wind vom blauen Himmel weht,
Die Myrthe still, und hoch der Lorbeer steht?
Kennst Du es wohl?
Dahin! dahin
Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Geliebter, ziehn.

Kennst Du das Haus? Auf Säulen ruht sein Dach,
Es glänzt der Saal, es schimmert das Gemach;
Und Marmorbilder steh'n und seh'n mich an:
Was hat man Dir, Du armes Kind, gethan?
Kennst Du es wohl?
Dahin! dahin
Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Beschützer, ziehn.

Kennst Du den Berg und seinen Wolkensteg?
Das Maulthier sucht im Nebel seinen Weg,
In Höhlen wohnt der Drachen alte Brut,
Es stürzt der Fels und über ihn die Fluth.
Kennst Du ihn wohl?
Dahin! dahin
Geht unser Weg! o Vater, laß uns ziehn!

Ritter Toggenburg.

„Ritter, treue Schwesterliebe
Widmet euch dies Herz.
Fordert keine andre Liebe,
Denn es macht mir Schmerz.

Ruhig mag ich euch erscheinen,
Ruhig gehen sehn.
Eurer Augen stilles Weinen
Kann ich nicht verstehen."

Und er hört's mit stummem Harme,
Reißt sich blutend los,
Preßt sie heftig in die Arme,
Schwingt sich auf sein Roß,
Schickt zu seinen Mannen allen
In dem Lande Schweiz;
Nach dem heil'gen Grab sie wallen,
Auf der Brust das Kreuz.

Große Thaten dort geschehen
Durch der Helden Arm;
Ihres Helmes Büsche wehen
In der Feinde Schwarm.
Und des Toggenburgers Name
Schreckt den Muselmann;
Doch das Herz von seinem Grame
Nicht genesen kann.

Und ein Jahr hat er's getragen,
Trägt's nicht länger mehr,
Ruhe kann er nicht erjagen
Und verläßt das Heer,
Sieht ein Schiff an Joppe's Strande,
Das die Segel bläht,
Schiffet heim zum theuren Lande,
Wo ihr Athem weht.

Und an ihres Schlosses Pforte
Klopft der Pilger an,
Ach! und mit dem Donnerworte
Wird sie aufgethan:

„Die ihr suchet, trägt den Schleier,
Ist des Himmels Braut.
Gestern war des Tages Feier,
Der sie Gott getraut."

Da verlässet er auf immer
Seiner Väter Schloß;
Seine Waffen sieht er nimmer,
Noch sein treues Roß.
Von der Toggenburg hernieder
Steigt er unbekannt,
Denn es deckt die edlen Glieder
Härenes Gewand.

Und er baut sich eine Hütte
Jener Gegend nah,
Wo das Kloster aus der Mitte
Düstrer Linden sah:
Harrend von des Morgens Lichte
Bis zu Abends Schein,
Stille Hoffnung im Gesichte,
Saß er da allein,

Blickte nach dem Kloster drüben,
Blickte Stunden lang
Nach dem Fenster seiner Lieben,
Bis das Fenster klang,
Bis die Liebliche sich zeigte,
Bis das theure Bild
Sich in's Thal herunter neigte
Ruhig, engelmild.

Und dann legt' er froh sich nieder,
Schlief getröstet ein,
Still sich freuend, wenn es wieder
Morgen würde sein.

Und so saß er viele Tage,
Saß viel Jahre lang,
Harrend ohne Schmerz und Klage
Bis das Fenster klang,

Bis die Liebliche sich zeigte,
Bis das theure Bild
Sich in's Thal herunter neigte
Ruhig, engelmild.
Und so saß er, eine Leiche,
Eines Morgens da.
Nach dem Fenster noch das bleiche
Stille Antlitz sah.

Sprüche.

Warum bin ich vergänglich, o Zeus? so fragte die Schönheit.
Macht' ich doch, sagte der Gott, nur das Vergängliche schön.

Und die Liebe, die Blumen, der Thau und die Jugend vernahmen's;
Alle gingen sie weg, weinend, von Jupiter's Thron.

Früchte bringt das Leben dem Mann; doch hangen sie selten
Roth und lustig am Zweig, wie uns ein Apfel begrüßt.

Kinder werfen den Ball an die Wand, und fangen ihn wieder;
Aber ich lob' mir das Spiel, wirft mir der Freund ihn zurück.

Halte das Bild der Würdigen fest! Wie leuchtende
Sterne
Theilte sie aus die Natur durch den unendlichen Raum.

Wem zu glauben ist, redlicher Freund, das kann ich Dir
sagen:
Glaube dem Leben; es lehrt besser als Redner und Buch.

Wißt ihr, wie auch der Kleine was ist? Er macht das
Kleine
Recht; der Große begehrt just so das Große zu thun.

Wer ist denn wirklich ein Fürst? Ich habe es immer
gesehen,
Der nur ist wirklich Fürst, der es vermochte zu sein.

Fabeln.

Der junge Hase.

Mit ernstem Schritte, wie der Held
Von Mancha, kam ein junger Hase
Nach Haus, und seine wunde Nase
Schien laut zu rufen: Staune, Welt!

„Du blutest, Neffe?" sprach ein Greis
Zu ihm, „was hat sich zugetragen?"
„Je nun, ich habe mich geschlagen,"
Versetzt' er, „und der Kampf war heiß."

„Was," rief die ganze Sippschaft aus,
„Geschlagen? wie? mit welchem Feinde?
Mit einem Hund?" „Ja, liebe Freunde,
Mit einer ungeheuern Maus."

Das Johanniswürmchen.

Ein Johanniswürmchen saß,
Seines Sternenscheins
Unbewußt, im weichen Gras
Eines Bardenhains.

Leise kroch aus faulem Moos
Seine Nachbarin,
Eine Kröte, hin und schoß
All ihr Gift auf ihn.

„Ach! was hab' ich dir gethan?"
Rief der Wurm ihr zu.
„Ei!" fuhr ihn das Unthier an,
„Warum glänzest du?"

Der Schmetterling und die Biene.

Die Biene ließ den Schmetterling
Einst ihre fetten Speicher sehen.
„Schön!" rief der bunte Gast: „doch muß ich dir gestehen,
Ich tauschte nicht mit dir."—„Warum nicht? dummes Ding!
Was hast denn Du? Laß sehn; wir wollen inventiren:
Ich hab' ein volles Haus!"—„Und ich ... nichts zu verlieren."

Des Esels Trost.

Hab' nichts, mich dran zu freuen,
Bin dumm und ungestalt,
Ohn' Muth und ohn, Gewalt;
Mein spotten und mich scheuen
Die Menschen jung und alt,
Bin weder warm noch kalt.

Hab' nichts mich dran zu freuen,
Bin dumm und ungestalt,
Muß Stroh und Disteln käuen,
Werd' unter Säcken alt —
Ach, die Natur schuf mich im Grimme!
Sie gab mir nichts ... als eine schöne Stimme.

Das Veilchen

Ein Veilchen auf der Wiese stand,
Gebückt in sich und unbekannt;
Es war ein herzig's Veilchen.
Da kam die junge Schäferin,
Mit leichtem Schritt und munterm Sinn
Daher, daher,
Die Wiese her, und sang.

Ach! denkt das Veilchen, wär ich nur
Die schönste Blume der Natur,
Ach nur ein kleines Weilchen,
Bis mich das Liebchen abgepflückt,
Und an den Busen matt gedrückt!
Ach nur, ach nur
Ein Viertelstündchen lang!

Ach! aber ach! das Mädchen kam
Und nicht in Acht das Veilchen nahm,
Ertrat das arme Veilchen.
Es sank und starb und freut' sich noch:
Und sterb' ich denn, so sterb' ich' doch
Durch sie, durch sie,
Zu ihren Füßen doch.

Der Sänger.

Was hör' ich draußen vor dem Thor,
Was auf der Brücke schallen?
Laß den Gesang vor unserm Ohr
Im Saale wiederhallen!
Der König sprach's, der Page lief;
Der Knabe kam, der König rief:
Laßt mir herein den Alten!

Gegrüßet seyd mir, edle Herrn,
Gegrüßt ihr, schöne Damen!
Welch' reicher Himmel! Stern bei Stern!
Wer kennet ihre Namen?
Im Saal voll Pracht und Herrlichkeit
Schließt, Augen, euch; hier ist nicht Zeit
Sich staunend zu ergötzen.

Der Sänger drückt' die Augen ein,
Und schlug in vollen Tönen;
Die Ritter schauten muthig drein,
Und in den Schooß die Schönen.
Der König, dem das Lied gefiel,
Ließ ihm, zum Lohne für sein Spiel,
Eine goldne Kette bringen.

Die goldne Kette gieb mir nicht,
Die Kette gieb den Rittern,
Vor deren kühnem Angesicht
Der Feinde Lanzen splittern;
Gieb sie dem Kanzler, den du hast,
Und laß ihn noch die goldne Last
Zu andern Lasten tragen.

Ich singe, wie der Vogel singt,
Der in den Zweigen wohnet;
Das Lied, das aus der Kehle dringt,
Ist Lohn, der reichlich lohnet.
Doch darf ich bitten, bitt'ich eins:
Laß mir den besten Becher Weins
In purem Golde reichen.

Er setzt' ihn an, er trank ihn aus:
O Trank voll süßer Labe!
O! dreimal hochbeglücktes Haus,
Wo das ist kleine Gabe!
Ergeht's euch wohl, so denkt an mich,
Und danket Gott so warm, als ich
Für diesen Trunk euch danke.

Aus Wilhelm Meister.

Wer nie sein Brod mit Thränen aß,
Wer nie die kummervollen Nächte
Auf seinem Bette weinend saß,
Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen Mächte!

Ihr führt in's Leben uns hinein,
Ihr laßt den Armen schuldig werden,
Dann überläßt ihr ihn der Pein;
Denn alle Schuld rächt sich auf Erden.

Die Bürgschaft.

Zu Dionys, dem Tyrannen, schlich
Damon, den Dolch im Gewande,
Ihn schlugen die Häscher in Bande.
„Was wolltest du mit dem Dolche? sprich."
Entgegnet ihm finster der Wütherich.—
„Die Stadt vom Tyrannen befreien."—
„Das sollst du am Kreuze bereuen."—

„Ich bin," spricht jener, „zu sterben bereit,
Und bitte nicht um mein Leben;
Doch willst du Gnade mir geben—
Ich flehe dich um drei Tage Zeit,
Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit—
Ich lasse den Freund dir als Bürgen;
Ihn magst du, entrinn' ich, erwürgen."

Da lächelt der König mit arger List,
Und spricht nach kurzem Bedenken:
„Drei Tage will ich dir schenken;
Doch wisse, wenn sie verstrichen die Frist,
Eh' du zurück mir gegeben bist,
So muß er statt deiner erblassen,
Doch dir ist die Strafe erlassen."

Und er kommt zum Freunde: „Der König gebeut,
Daß ich am Kreuz mit dem Leben
Bezahle das frevelnde Streben;

Doch will er mir gönnen drei Tage Zeit,
Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit;
So bleib' du dem König zum Pfande,
Bis ich komme, zu lösen die Bande."

Und schweigend umarmt ihn der treue Freund,
Und liefert sich aus dem Tyrannen;
Der Andere ziehet von dannen.
Und ehe das dritte Morgenroth scheint,
Hat er schnell mit dem Gatten die Schwester vereint,
Eilt heim mit sorgender Seele,
Damit er die Frist nicht verfehle.

Da gießt unendlicher Regen herab,
Von den Bergen stürzen die Quellen,
Und die Bäche, die Ströme schwellen;
Und er kommt an's Ufer mit wanderndem Stab—
Da reißet die Brücke der Strudel hinab,
Und donnernd sprengen die Wogen
Des Gewölbes krachenden Bogen.

Und trostlos irrt er an Ufers Rand:
Wie weit er auch spähet und blicket
Und die Stimme, die rufende, schicket,
Da stößet kein Nachen vom sichern Strand,
Der ihn setze an das gewünschte Land,
Kein Schiffer lenket die Fähre,
Und der wilde Strom wird zum Meere.

Da sinkt er an's Ufer und weint und fleht,
Die Hände zum Zeus erhoben:
„O, hemme des Stromes Toben!
Es eilen die Stunden, im Mittag steht
Die Sonne, und wenn sie niedergeht,
Und ich kann die Stadt nicht erreichen,
So muß der Freund mir erbleichen."

Doch wachsend erneut sich des Stromes Wuth,
Und Welle auf Welle zerrinnet,
Und Stunde an Stunde entrinnet—
Da treibt ihn die Angst, da faßt er sich Muth,
Und wirft sich hinein in die brausende Fluth
Und theilt mit gewaltigen Armen
Den Strom—und ein Gott hat Erbarmen—

Und gewinnt das Ufer und eilet fort
Und danket dem rettenden Gotte;
Da stürzet die raubende Rotte
Hervor aus des Waldes nächtlichem Ort,
Den Pfad ihm sperrend, und schnaubet Mord
Und hemmet des Wanderers Eile
Mit drohend geschwungener Keule.

„Was wollt ihr?" ruft er, vor Schrecken bleich,
„Ich habe nichts, als mein Leben,
Das muß ich dem Könige geben!"
Und entreißet die Keule dem nächsten gleich:
„Um des Freundes willen, erbarmet euch!"
Und drei, mit gewaltigen Streichen
Erlegt er; die Andern entweichen.

Und die Sonne versendet glühenden Brand,
Und von der unendlichen Mühe
Ermattet, sinken die Kniee:
„O hast du mich gnädig aus Räubershand,
Aus dem Strom mich gerettet an's heilige Land,
Und soll hier verschmachtend verderben,
Und der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben!"

Und horch! da sprudelt es silberhell,
Ganz nahe, wie rieselndes Rauschen,
Und stille hält er, zu lauschen,

Und sieh, aus dem Felsen, geschwätzig, schnell,
Springt murmelnd hervor ein lebendiger Quell.
Und freudig bückt er sich nieder
Und erfrischet die brennenden Glieder.

Und die Sonne blickt durch der Zweige Grün
Und malt auf den glänzenden Matten
Der Bäume gigantische Schatten.
Und zwei Wanderer sieht er die Straße ziehn,
Will eilenden Laufes vorüber fliehn,
Da hört er die Worte sie sagen:
„Jetzt wird er an's Kreuz geschlagen!"

Und die Angst beflügelt den eilenden Fuß,
Ihn jagen der Sorgen Qualen;
Da schimmern in Abendroths Strahlen
Von ferne die Zinnen von Syrakus,
Und entgegen kommt ihm Philostratus,
Des Hauses redlicher Hüther;
Der erkennet entsetzt den Gebieter:

„Zurück! du rettest den Freund nicht mehr,
So rette das eigene Leben!
Den Tod erleidet er eben.
Von Stunde zu Stunde gewartet' er
Mit hoffender Seele der Wiederkehr;
Ihm konnte den muthigen Glauben
Der Hohn des Tyrannen nicht rauben."—

„Und ist es zu spät, und kann ich ihm nicht
Ein Retter willkommen erscheinen,
So soll mich der Tod ihm vereinen.
Deß rühme der blut'ge Tyrann sich nicht,
Daß der Freund dem Freunde gebrochen die Pflicht;
Er schlachte der Opfer zweie
Und glaube an Liebe und Treue!"

Und die Sonne geht unter—da steht er am Thor
Und sieht das Kreuz schon erhöhet,
Das die Menge gaffend umstehet;
An dem Seile schon zieht man den Freund empor,—
Da zertrennt er gewaltig den dichten Chor:
„Mich, Henker," ruft er, „erwürget!
Da bin ich, für den er gebürget."

Und Erstaunen ergreift das Volk umher;
In den Armen liegen sich Beide
Und weinen vor Schmerzen und Freude.
Da sieht man kein Auge thränenleer,
Und zum Könige bringt man die Wundermähr;
Der fühlt ein menschliches Rühren,
Läßt schnell vor den Thron sie führen—

Und blicket sie lange verwundernd an.
Drauf spricht er: „Es ist euch gelungen,
Ihr habt das Herz mir bezwungen!
Und die Treue, sie ist doch kein leerer Wahn,
So nehmet auch mich zum Genossen an:
Ich sei, gewährt mir die Bitte,
In eurem Bunde der Dritte."

Der Handschuh.

Vor seinem Löwengarten,
Das Kampfspiel zu erwarten,
Saß König Franz,
Und um ihn die Großen der Krone,
Und rings auf hohem Balkone
Die Damen in schönem Kranz.

Und wie er winkt mit dem Finger,
Auf thut sich der weite Zwinger,
Und hinein mit bedächtigem Schritt
Ein Löwe tritt
Und sieht sich stumm
Rings um
Mit langem Gähnen,
Und schüttelt die Mähnen
Und streckt die Glieder
Und legt sich nieder.

Und der König winkt wieder—
Da öffnet sich behend
Ein zweites Thor,
Daraus rennt
Mit wildem Sprunge
Ein Tiger hervor.
Wie der den Löwen erschaut,
Brüllt er laut,
Schlägt mit dem Schweif
Einen furchtbaren Reif
Und recket die Zunge,
Und im Kreise scheu
Umgeht er den Leu,
Grimmig schnurrend;
Drauf legt er sich murrend
Zur Seite nieder.

Und der König winkt wieder—
Da speit das doppelt geöffnete Haus
Zwei Leoparden auf Einmal aus.
Die stürzen mit muthiger Kampfbegier
Auf das Tigerthier;
Das packt sie mit seinen grimmigen Tatzen,

Und der Leu mit Gebrüll
Richtet sich auf—da wird's still;
Und herum im Kreis,
Von Mordsucht heiß,
Lagern sich die gräulichen Katzen.

Da fällt von Altans Rand
Ein Handschuh von schöner Hand
Zwischen den Tiger und den Leun
Mitten hinein.

Und zu Ritter Delorges, spottender Weis',
Wendet sich Fräulein Kunigund':
„Herr Ritter, ist Eure Lieb so heiß,
Wie Ihr mir's schwört zu jeder Stund',
Ei, so hebt mir den Handschuh auf!"

Und der Ritter, in schnellem Lauf,
Steigt hinab in den furchtbar'n Zwinger
Mit festem Schritte,
Und aus der Ungeheuer Mitte
Nimmt er den Handschuh mit keckem Finger.

Und mit Erstaunen und mit Grauen
Sehen's die Ritter und Edelfrauen,
Und gelassen bringt er den Handschuh zurück.
Da schallt ihm sein Lob aus jedem Munde,
Aber mit zärtlichem Liebesblick—
Er verheißt ihm sein nahes Glück—
Empfängt ihn Fräulein Kunigunde.
Und er wirft ihr den Handschuh in's Gesicht:
„Den Dank, Dame, begehr' ich nicht!"
Und verläßt sie zur selben Stunde.

☞ The last two Poems, "The Luck of Edenhall," and "The Ring of Polycrates," are given in PART III. *without* Interlinear Translation, and, therefore, need not be repeated here.

APPENDIX.

SENTENCES FOR RE-TRANSLATION.

THE ERL-KING.

The father has the boy in his arm.
Dost thou not hear the wind ?
He rides through night and wind.
My mother is on the strand.
Wilt thou go with me?
My daughters have beautiful flowers.
Why dost thou ride so fast ?
Is the king dead ! Who has his crown ? His son.
The wind whistles in dry leaves.
Come, go with me, my son.
My sweet boy was dead in his arms.
How (wie) grey the willows are!

THE PILGRIM.

I was yet in my father's house.
It grew morning, and I travelled forth.
I built bridges across the wild river.
A mighty hope drove me to the great sea; but it lies before me in wide emptiness; and I am not nearer to the goal.
"Wander," cried he, "the way is open." And I stood never still.
The heaven above me will never touch the earth.

THE CASTLE BY THE SEA.

Hast thou seen the high castle by the sea?

Indeed, I have seen it, and the moon stand over it; and I heard festive songs out of the lofty halls, but I listened to a dirge with tears.

Why weepest thou? I saw the king and his wife, and they are now dead. The beautiful maiden is in the black mourning dress.

MIGNON.

Italy (Italien) is the Land where the orange blooms. A soft wind blows from the blue heaven. The myrtle stands still, and high the laurel. Thither let us travel, my beloved one!

The roof on my father's House rests on pillars. The hall glitters, and many marble statues stand there. Knowest thou it? Thither, over the Alps, let us travel, my protector!

The mule on the (den) Alps seeks his way in the fog. The old brood of the dragons dwells in the caverns, the rock falls and over it the flood—O, the Alps! over the Alps, thither, my father, goes our way.

KNIGHT TOGGENBURG.

He hears her with silent grief, presses her violently into his arms, swings himself on his horse, and wanders to the Holy Sepulchre. His name terrifies the Mussulman; but his heart cannot recover of its grief.

He forsakes the army, and sails home to the dear land where she dwells (wohnt). But, alas, she is in the Cloister in the midst of gloomy lindens, and is the bride of heaven.

The Knight turns Monk (Mönch), and builds himself a hut near that region and looked to the window of his beloved (one), till the window sounded and the lovely one showed herself.

And, so looking, sat he there one day, a corpse; and his pale face looked yet towards the window.

SAYINGS.

(The) Beauty asked Jupiter: Why am I perishable? He answered (antwortete): I made only the perishable beautiful.

FABLES.

A young Hare came home with solemn step, like the hero of Mancha, and his nose was bloody. Thou bleedest, cried his mother, what has happened? I have fought, replied he, and the battle was hot. Fought! with whom? With a big, big Mouse. O thou hero!

A Toad crept out of rotten moss. She crept up to the Glow-worm in the soft grass, and shot all her poison upon him. "Alas! why?" cried the worm, "What have I done?" The toad answered, "Why glitterest thou?"

The Butterfly said to the Bee: "Thou art rich, but I must confess I would not change with thee." "Why? Have I not a full house?" "Oh yes, but I have nothing to lose, and no cares (Sorgen)."

The Ass said: "It is true, I am mis-shapen, stupid, without courage or strength; but I know Nature loves me much (sehr), for (denn) she gave me a beautiful voice."

Coriolanus used (pflegte) to say: "Oh! your sweet voices! your sweet voices!"

THE VIOLET.

A violet stood on the meadow, weak (schwach) and unknown; but it was a darling violet. A young Shepherdess came over the meadow with light step, and sang, and sang. The violet loved the shepherdess, and wished to be the most beautiful flower in nature, in order (um) to die on her (ihrem) bosom. But the girl came, and trod the poor violet to death; it died, and sang: "I die, but I die at her feet!"

THE MINSTREL.

The King spoke; "What hear I outside before the gate? Is it the Minstrel? Let his song resound in our hall." The page ran, the Minstrel came, and he cried. "Be greeted, noble lords; be greeted, fair ladies. Oh, hall full of splendour and glory!" And he sang in full tones a song of love, and a song of heroic courage (Heldengesang); and the fair ones looked into their lap, and the knights looked bravely about.

The King spoke, the page ran and fetched a golden chain for the (den) Minstrel. "Give me not the chain; give it to the knights, to the chancellor; but if I may ask, give me wine, the best wine in a golden goblet." He drank it up, his face glowed, and he cried: "Oh! highly-favoured house, where that is a small gift! Thank God, as I thank you for this draught!"

INDEX

OF

WORDS EXPLAINED IN THE FOOT-NOTES, ETC.

S.

T.

U.

V.

W.

ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 18, line 8, after "kaufen [cheapen], buy," insert, "*whence*, chaffer, Cheapside, Eastcheap, Chipping, etc."

„ 21, line 13, for "Kranich, crane," read, "Knecht [knight], menial servant."

„ 46, line 10, for "gewähren, etc.," read, "gewähren [warrant, guarantee], grant."

„ 67, line 13 from the bottom, for "Gebirge, mountain, range," read, "Gebirge, mountain-range."

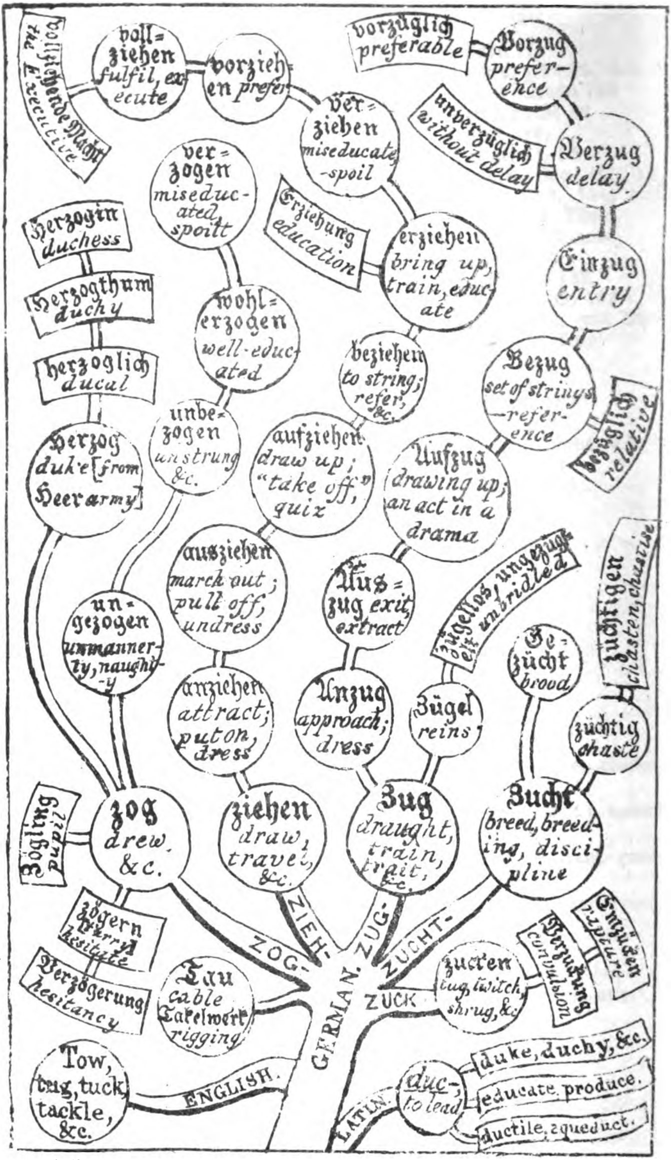
„ 72, table, insert, "sichtbar, visible | unsichtbar, invisible."

„ 126, last line of poetry, for "The foeman's," read, "The foemen's."

„ 189, line 12 from the bottom, for "violently," read, "vehemently."

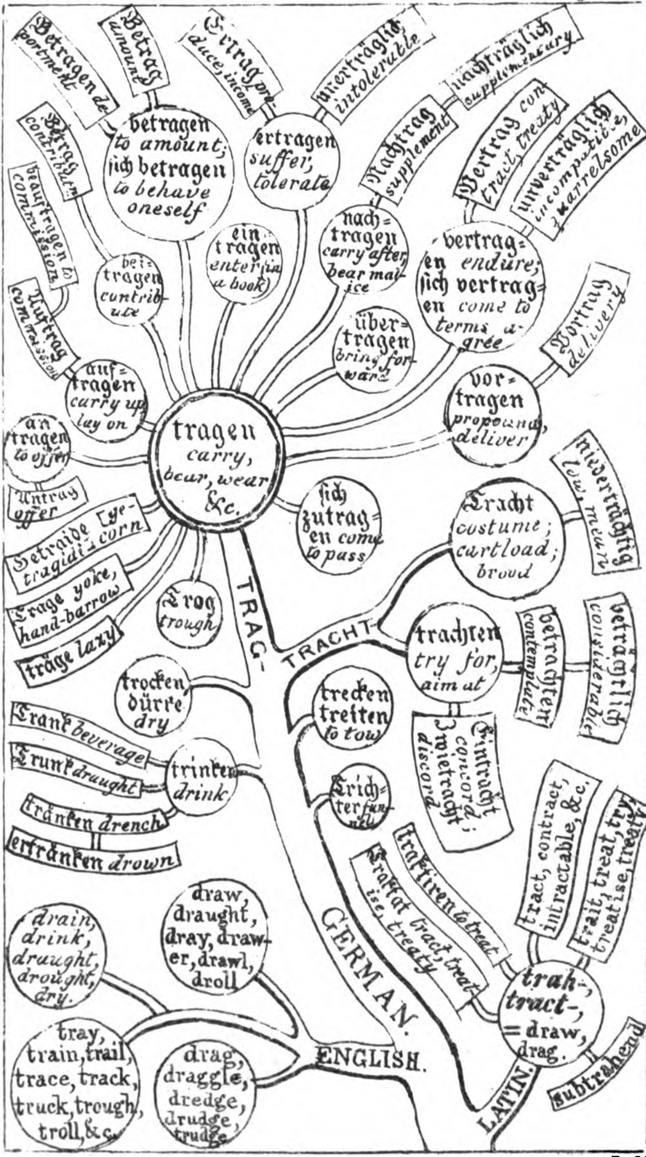
Wertheimer & Co., Printers, Finsbury Circus.

Etymological Tree — Ziehen.



The above are but a few of the most important Derivatives of ziehen.

Etymological Tree — Tragen.



Books
FOR THE ACQUIREMENT OF
FOREIGN LANGUAGES,
PUBLISHED BY
DAVID NUTT, 270, STRAND.

GERMAN.

TIARKS' PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Eleventh edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

——— PROGRESSIVE GERMAN READER, containing Grammatical Exercises, Easy Letters, Short Stories, Historical Sketches, Dialogues, Idiomatical Phrases and Proverbs. Eighth edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

——— EXERCISES FOR WRITING GERMAN, adapted to the Rules of his GERMAN GRAMMAR. Tenth edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*.

——— KEY TO THE EXERCISES FOR WRITING GERMAN, which may also be used as a Reading Book for practising the Rules of Grammar by those who do not wish to write Exercises. 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*. 6*d*.

——— INTRODUCTORY GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, with an INTRODUCTORY READER, and INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES. Seventh Edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

——— SACRED GERMAN POETRY, OR COLLECTION OF HYMNS. 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*.

This is the most extensively used Series of Elementary German Books, and they enjoy the highest reputation both for public and private tuition.

APEL'S GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, founded upon the Principles of Grimm, Becker, Schmitthenner, &c. 8vo, *cloth boards*, 5*s*.

THE MODERN LINGUIST; or, Conversations in English, French, and German; preceded by Rules for the Pronunciation of German, a copious Vocabulary, and a Selection of Familiar Phrases; and followed by Models of Receipts, Bills of Exchange, Letters, Notes, Tables of the English, French, and German Coins, and of the English and French Weights and Measures. By ALBERT BARTELS. In square 16mo, neatly bound in cloth. Third edition, price 3*s*. 6*d*.

——— in ENGLISH and GERMAN (only). 18mo, bound in cloth. Second edition, price 2*s*. 6*d*.

It has been the aim of the compiler of these Works to introduce only such phrases and expressions as refer more exclusively to the current topics of the day; and he believes they will be found more practically useful to the student and to the traveller than the majority of Guides and Dialogue Books hitherto published.

AHN'S NEW PRACTICAL AND EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Two parts in 1 vol., 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*.
Each part separately, *sewed*, 1*s*. 6*d*.

——— KEY to Ditto, *sewed*, 8*d*.

BOILEAU. On the NATURE and GENIUS of the GERMAN LANGUAGE. New edition, 12mo, *cloth boards*, 5*s*.

——— LINGUIST. A complete Course of Instruction in the German Language, in which attention is particularly directed to peculiarities in Grammatical forms and constructions: exemplified by selections from the best authors. New Edition, 12mo, *boards*, reduced from 7*s*. to 3*s*. 6*d*.

CAMPAN'S CONVERSATIONS OF A MOTHER WITH HER DAUGHTER; in a Series of Dialogues, arranged for English Young Ladies. Translated into German, by HENRIETTA VEITH. 12mo, *cl.*, 4*s*.

CRABB'S EXTRACTS FROM THE BEST GERMAN AUTHORS. Eighth edition, entirely remodelled and considerably enlarged, with Analytical Translation, Notes, and a copious Vocabulary, for the Use of Beginners in Schools and private Tuition. By DR. HAUSMANN. 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

——— ELEMENTS OF GERMAN AND ENGLISH CONVERSATION ON FAMILIAR SUBJECTS, with a Vocabulary to each Dialogue. Eleventh edition. By DR. BERNAYS. 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

DEMMLER (F.) COMPENDIOUS GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Second edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 4*s*.

——— GERMAN READER, a Selection of Extracts from distinguished German Authors. New edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 4*s*.

——— EXERCISES ON THE GERMAN GRAMMAR. Second edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*. 6*d*.

——— KEY TO DITTO, 12mo, 2*s*. 6*d*.

The Author of this series of School Books is the Professor of German at the Royal Military College, Sandhurst.

DONATTI'S GERMAN AND ENGLISH GRAMMAR. Third edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*.

EGESTORFF (C. H. C.) A CONCISE GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE on the principles adopted in the Schools of Germany, etc. 4*s*.

——— GUIDE TO SPEAKING GERMAN. 1*s*.

——— EXERCISES ON GERMAN CONVERSATIONS, WITH ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS. 1*s*.

ERMELER (C. F.) DEUTSCHES LESEBUCH, or GERMAN READING BOOK. New edition, enlarged, improved, and adapted to the use of English Students, by DR. A. HEIMANN, Professor of German at the London University. Seventh edition, 12mo, *cloth boards*, 5*s*.

This is one of the most desirable and useful Reading Books that can be placed in the hands of a student of the German language. The selection has been made with great taste and care, and does not contain a single piece that is not a perfect specimen of composition.

EMMERICH (W.) A NEW SYSTEM OF CONJUGATING REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE GERMAN, FRENCH, AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES. 8vo, *cloth*, 4*s*.

EULENSTEIN'S GERMAN GRAMMAR. Fourth edition, 12mo, *cl.*, 4*s.*
——— EXERCISES on Ditto. 12mo, *cloth boards*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

FEILING'S PRACTICAL GUIDE TO THE STUDY AND GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Second edition, 12mo, *roan*, 5*s.*
——— COURSE OF GERMAN LITERATURE. 3rd edit., *cl.*, *bds.*, 5*s.*
——— KEY TO THE GUIDE. 12mo, *cloth*, 4*s.*

The Author of these works is the Professor of German at the City of London School, and the Royal Military Academyat Woolwich.

FISCHEL (Dr. M. M.) A GERMAN READING BOOK, on an entirely new principle, containing a Story by FRANZ HOFFMANN, literally translated with Grammatical Notes and Explanations of Idioms, with an Elementary German Grammar, by DR. M. M. FISCHEL, of Queen's College, London. 1 vol., crown 8vo. (300 pages), 5*s.*

FLOHR (Madame A.) COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN THE GERMAN LANGUAGE; to which are added complete Extracts from the best German Authors, and their Biographies. Dedicated to H.M. the late Queen Dowager. Second edition, 1 vol. 8vo, bound in cloth, uniform with Ollendorff's Grammar. 10*s.* 6*d.*

FLUEGEL'S GERMAN AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH AND GERMAN DICTIONARY. New edition, adapted to the English Student, with great additions and improvements, by C. A. FEILING, DR. A. HEIMANN, and J. OXENFORD, Esq. 2 vols., 8vo, *cloth boards*, 1*l.* 4*s.*

It is very desirable that parties wishing to have this work should be particular in specifying the *New London Edition*, as there are two other editions bearing the name of Fluegel: the one more bulky and much dearer,—the other, edited by the *Son* of the Lexicographer, smaller and somewhat cheaper, though both are greatly inferior in utility for the English student, having been compiled without English assistance, and for the use especially of German students. An explanatory description of the difference between the various editions will be found in the Preface to the New London Edition, which may be had, gratis, in a separate form, by application to either of the Publishers.

——— Abridged edition for the Use of Travellers and Schools. New Edition. 1854. Royal 18mo (760 pages), 7*s.* 6*d.*

FOUQUÉ (DE LA MOTTE). UNDINE. Square 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s.*
——— SINTRAM UND SEINE GEFAHRTEN. Square 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*
——— DIE BEIDEN HAUPTLEUTE. Square 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s.*
——— ASLAUGA'S RITTER. Square 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s.*
——— DIE JAHRESZEITEN. Four Parts in 1 vol., square 12mo, *cloth*, 7*s.* 6*d.*

The above Editions of Fouqué's celebrated Romances, known as the "Four Seasons", are elegantly and correctly reprinted, and adapted both for presents and reading books.

The FIRST GERMAN READING BOOK, for English Children and Beginners in the Study of the Language, with Explanatory Notes by DR. A. HEIMANN, Professor of German at the London University. New Edition. 12mo, *cloth bds.*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

This very admirable little work, compiled by the Professor of German at the London University, has met with much success; and is as well suited for adults commencing the study of the Languages as for children.

GOETHE'S IPHIGENIE AUF TAURIS, arranged for the use of the German Student, with Notes, Vocabulary, and Interlinear Translations of the First Scenes, by M. BEHR, Ph.D., late Professor of the German Language and Literature at Winchester College. 12mo, cloth, 2*s*. 6*d*.

——— FAUST; with explanations of the most difficult words and phrases, by the REV. DR. TIARKS, to which are added the two celebrated Hymns, Stabat Mater and Dies Iræ, in the original, and with a German Metrical Translation. 18mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

GRIMM'S FÜNF MÆHRCHEN AUS DER TAUSEND UND EINEN NACHT. 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

This little work contains a translation, by A. L. Grimm, of five of the most popular tales out of the Arabian Nights; it was reprinted at the suggestion of Dr. Tiarks, and is used in many schools.

HAUFF, DAS KALTE HERZ. With a literal translation of the first half-dozen pages, explanation of idiomatic peculiarities, etc., by H. APEL. New edition, 12mo, *cloth boards*, 3*s*. 1856.

HEILNER'S (G. M.) Grammar of the German Language philosophically developed. 8vo, *cloth*, 7*s*. 6*d*., originally published at 10*s*.

This is, undoubtedly, one of the most scientific and profound Treatises on German Grammar that has ever been published in this country.

HEIMANN'S (DR. A.) FIFTY LESSONS ON THE ELEMENTS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

——— MATERIALS FOR TRANSLATING ENGLISH INTO GERMAN. Two parts in 1 vol., 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*. 6*d*.

Either part can be had separately, price 3*s*.

The Author of these two very useful works is Professor of the German Language and Literature at the London University.

"Dr. Heimann is one of the most accomplished and popular of our German teachers, and he here puts forth the method which he has so long followed. The lessons are so arranged that the *whole* of the grammar instead of being 'committed to memory', is committed to *practice* by its *distribution* over the whole fifty lessons: each lesson opens with a vocabulary, then follow exercises on that vocabulary, &c."—*Leader*.

HILPERT'S GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY. 2 stout vols., 8vo., 1900 pages, *sewed*, 8*s*.; bound in 1 vol., *cloth*, 9*s*.; *half-morocco, flexible back*, 12*s*.

This is unquestionably the cheapest Dictionary.

KOHLRAUSCH'S KURZE DARSTELLUNG DER DEUTSCHE GESCHICHTE, with copious English Notes, and a short Sketch of German Literature, by DR. A. BENSBACH, Professor of German at Queen's College, Galway. 8vo, *cloth bds*., 4*s*. 6*d*.

This work contains an admirable compendium of Kohlrausch's well-known History of Germany. The notes were specially compiled for the use of the scholars in Winchester College.

LOWENTHAL (N.) GUIDE TO THE STUDY OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. 8vo, *cloth*. New edition in the Press.

STROMEYER'S GERMAN EXERCISES, with a Grammatical Introduction, being a Guide to German Writing. 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*.

MARCUS' COMPARATIVE VOCABULARY OF THE ENGLISH AND GERMAN LANGUAGES. Square 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

This little work is compiled on an entirely new and original plan, and will be found of great assistance in tracing the connection between the two languages, and in shewing the value and bearing of numerous idiomatical expressions.

——— THE DECLENSION OF THE GERMAN ARTICLE, ADJECTIVE, PRONOUN, AND NOUN. 8vo, *sewed*, 1*s*.

NAGEL'S TREATISE ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. 12mo, *cloth boards*, 4*s*.

"The theory is Becker's; but Mr. Nagel has worked it out on a plan of his own, carefully discussing the value of every letter, and the principles of accentuation in detail, illustrating his remarks with copious exercises. It is altogether a very useful book, and unique in its kind—and we are not aware of any other that will fully supply its place."—*Times*.

NOEHDEN'S GERMAN AND ENGLISH GRAMMAR. Ninth edit., 7*s*. 6*d*.

——— ELEMENTS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR. 12mo, *bds*., 5*s*.

——— GERMAN EXERCISES. 12mo, *boards*, 6*s*.

——— KEY TO EXERCISES, by SCHULTZ. 8vo, *boards*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

OTTO (DR. E.) GERMAN CONVERSATION-GRAMMAR, revised by DR. THOS. GASPEY. *New Edition*. One vol., square 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

——— KEY TO DITTO, 2*s*.

PIRSCHER'S GERMAN MADE EASY. 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

SONNENSCHEIN AND **S. STALLYBRASS'** EASY READING BOOK FOR STUDENTS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, consisting of Short Poems selected from Goethe, Schiller, Uhland, etc., with interlinear translations and explanations. 1 vol., 12mo., *cloth boards*, 5s.

TIECK'S BLAUBART, EIN MÄRCHEN IN FÜNF AKTEN, with a translation of all the difficult words and passages, examination of Grammatical peculiarities, &c., by H. APEL, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*.

TROPPANEGER (A.) ENGLISH GERMAN GRAMMAR, with Reading Lessons and Progressive Exercises. Fifth edition, 12mo, 6*s*.

WENDEBORN'S GERMAN GRAMMAR. Eleventh edition, entirely remodelled by Professor A. HEIMANN, of the London University. 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

WITTICH'S GERMAN GRAMMAR. Fourth edit., 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*. 6*d*.

——— GERMAN FOR BEGINNERS. New edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

——— KEY TO DITTO. 12mo, *cloth*, 7*s*.

——— GERMAN TALES FOR BEGINNERS, arranged in a progressive order. Seventh edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

SPANISH.

DELMAR'S COMPLETE THEORETICAL and PRACTICAL GRAMMAR of the SPANISH LANGUAGE, in a Series of Lectures, with copious Examples and Exercises *written* with the new Spanish Orthography, and particularly adapted for Self-Tuition. 6th Edition, carefully revised, 12mo, cloth, 8*s*.

——— KEY to the EXERCISES contained in DITTO. Cloth, 3*s*. 6*d*.

DELMAR'S GUIDE to SPANISH and ENGLISH CONVERSATION. 3rd Edition, enlarged and improved, 4*s*.

——— MODELOS DE LITERATURA ESPAÑOLA: or, Choice Selections in Prose, Poetry, and the Drama, from the most celebrated Spanish writers, from the Fifteenth century to the present day; with a brief sketch of Spanish literature, and explanatory notes in English, by E. DELMAR. 12mo, *cloth* (300 pages), 7*s*.

ROWBOTHAM'S NEW GUIDE to SPANISH and ENGLISH CONVERSATIONS, consisting not only of Modern Phrases, Idioms, and Proverbs, but containing also a copious Vocabulary; with Tables of Spanish Moneys, Weights, and Measures, for the use of the Spaniards as well as the English. 3rd Edition, enlarged and improved, square 18mo, cloth, 3*s*. 6*d*.

NEUMANN AND BARETTI'S DICTIONARY OF THE SPANISH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES. Two vols., *boards*, 1*l*. 8*s*.

——— POCKET ABRIDGED EDITION. 18mo, *roan*, 6*s*.

ITALIAN.

BLANC'S NEW POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE ITALIAN AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, from Baretti, Graglia, and others. Two parts in 1 thick vol., 32mo, 834 pages, *roan*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

GRAGLIA'S POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH AND ITALIAN LANGUAGES. Two Parts in 1 vol., 18mo, *roan*, 4*s*. 6*d*.

CLASSIC READINGS IN ITALIAN LITERATURE. A Selection from the Prose Writings of the best Italian Authors from the thirteenth century to the present time; with Critical and Explanatory Notes and Biographical Notices, for the Use of Students. By G. CANNIZZARO, Professor of the Italian Language. Thick 8vo, 900 pages, *cloth boards*, 7*s*., published at 15*s*.

This excellent compilation may almost be said to contain a complete repertory of Italian Literature, and the price at which it is offered is much below the cost of printing, etc.

BARETTI'S ITALIAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY, a New Edition, much improved, and entirely re-edited by Davenport and Cometati, 2 vols. 8vo, *cloth*, 1*l*. 10*s*.

JAMES AND GRASSI. ENGLISH AND ITALIAN AND ITALIAN ENGLISH DICTIONARY, with the Pronunciation and Accentuation of every Word in both Languages. 1 vol., 12mo, roan, 6*s*., *sewed*, 5*s*.

FRENCH.

A COMPLETE COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, in 3 parts. Grammatical Course—Reading and Translation Course — Conversational Course, by ANDRÉ **SEARS**, Professor of the French Language and Literature in the Collegiate Institution, Liverpool. One thick vol., 12mo., bound in cloth, price 5*s.* Each part can be had separately, price 2*s.*; and a Key to the whole, price 2*s.*

ANGOVILLE'S COMPLETE TREATISE ON FRENCH GRAMMAR, illustrated by numerous Examples. Thick 12mo, 707 pages, bound in roan, 6*s.* 6*d.*

The Author of this excellent work is Professor of the French Language at Winchester College, the Naval School at Gosport, &c., &c., and his Grammar has been introduced in several schools and private families with great and well-merited success.

BARTEL'S MODERN LINGUIST; or, Conversations in English and French, followed by Models of Receipts, Bills of Exchange, Letters, Notes, Tables of French and English Coins, &c. Second edition, conveniently printed in pocket size, price 2*s.*, neatly bound in cloth.

BLANC'S POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Two parts in one thick vol., 32mo, 990 pages, *roan*, 3*s.*: 1855.

This is the cheapest French Dictionary ever published.

NUGENT'S POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES. Two Parts in 1 vol., 18mo, *roan*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

JAMES AND MOLÉ'S DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, FOR GENERAL USE, with the Accentuation and a Literal Pronunciation of each Word in both Languages; compiled from the best and most approved English and French Authorities. Two Parts in 1 vol., 8vo., *sewed*, 4*s.* 6*d.*; *roan*, 5*s.* 6*d.*

FABLES DE LAFONTAINE, avec Notices sur sa vie et sur celles d'Esope et de Phédre, et des Notes, par M. de Levizac. Neuvième edition, 12mo, roan, 5*s.*

NUMA POMPILIUS, par Florian. Neuvième edition, revue et soigneusement corrigée, par N. Wanostrocht, 12mo. roan, 4*s.*

The **LEXICON FRENCH GRAMMAR**, for the use of English Students, by SAINT ANGE SIMEON, late Professor at Glasgow. One vol., 12mo, containing 456 closely printed pages, neatly bound in cloth, 5*s.*

WANOSTROCHT'S GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, with practical exercises, revised and enlarged, by J. C. TARVER, 12mo. roan, 4*s.*

MANIER'S FRENCH PHRASE AND WORD BOOKS, after the plan of the Abbé Bossut, 32mo, in stiff wrapper, 1*s.* each.

——— FIRST AND SECOND FRENCH READER, 32mo, stiff wrapper, 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

These admirable little works will be found of great utility for beginners in the study of the language.

LES DEUX PERROQUETS; Ouvrage Français destiné à faciliter aux Anglais la Causerie Elégante, la Lettre et le Billet, à l'usage des Dames, des Jeunes Filles, et des Enfans; par UNE DAME. 12mo, handsomely bound in cloth, 4*s.*

"To recommend this little book to general favour it is only necessary to state briefly its useful object, which is to facilitate the acquirement by the English of the particular tone and idiom of the every day language, spoken and written in the best French society, the 'talk', the prattle, the chat, the gossip, but all perhaps better expressed by the term *causerie* than by any English word that at present occurs to us. Without this acquirement one cannot get on in Paris, though he may have long studied the language and acquired a familiar acquaintance with the most elegant French writers."—*Morning Chronicle.*

FRENCH SCHOOL BOOKS,

WITH THE ELISIONS MARKED, AND THE MODIFICATION OF VOWELS,

BY J. TOURRIER.

1. FRENCH AS IT IS SPOKEN IN PARIS. Forty-four Lessons on the Elisions, the Modification of Vowels, Accents, Quantity, &c. 21st Thousand, *sd.*, 1*s.*; *cl.* 1*s.* 6*d.*
2. EASY FRENCH LESSONS. A French Primer, 1*s.*
3. THE LITTLE MODEL-BOOK. Bound with the above, making altogether Eighty very progressive French Lessons, and a small Treatise on French as it is spoken, *sewed*, 1*s.* 9*d.*; *cloth*, 2*s.*
4. THE JUVENILE FRENCH GRAMMAR, Rules, Exercises, and many Examples, &c., 300 pp., *cloth*, 2s. 6d.
5. KEY to Ditto, 2*s.* 6*d.*

FRENCH BOOKS FOR ADVANCED PUPILS.

6. THE MODEL-BOOK, being a complete course of One Hundred Lessons, Prose and Poetry, 400 pp., 8vo, *cloth boards*, reduced to 7*s.* 6*d.*
7. FRENCH GRAMMAR, with 337 numbered Rules, 224 Exercises, with Referring Numbers. Seventh Edition, 400 pp., 8vo, *cloth boards*, 5*s.*, *sewed*, 4*s.* 6*d.*
8. KEY to Ditto, 3*s.*
9. A GUIDE TO PARIS AND ITS ENVIRONS; or, Familiar Dialogues in French and English, with a Map. Seventh thousand, 2*s.* 6*d.*; *cloth*, 3*s.*
10. JACOTOT'S METHOD Explained. A new plan of Education and Intellectual Emancipation, 1*s.* 6*d.*
11. THE EIGHTY FRENCH CONSONANTS, 1*s.*